



**A BIBLIOGRAPHY OF  
SOUTH AFRICAN LANGUAGES,  
2008-2017**

*With an introduction by Menán du Plessis and Bonny Sands*

BRILL

A Bibliography of South African Languages, 2008-2017



PERMANENT INTERNATIONAL COMMITTEE OF  
LINGUISTS

# A Bibliography of South African Languages, 2008-2017

Published by the Permanent International Committee of  
Linguists under the auspices of the International Council for  
Philosophy and Humanistic Studies

*Edited by*

Anne Aarssen, René Genis & Eline van der Veken

*with an introduction by*

Menán du Plessis



BRILL

LEIDEN | BOSTON  
2018

The production of this book has been generously sponsored by the Stichting Bibliographie Linguistique, Leiden.



This is an open access title distributed under the terms of the prevailing CC-BY-NC-ND License at the time of publication, which permits any non-commercial use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided no alterations are made and the original author(s) and source are credited.

Cover illustration: the name of the Constitutional Court building (Johannesburg) written in eleven official languages of South Africa.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2018947044

Typeface for the Latin, Greek, and Cyrillic scripts: "Brill". See and download: [brill.com/brill-typeface](http://brill.com/brill-typeface).

ISBN 978-90-04-37660-1 (paperback)

ISBN 978-90-04-37662-5 (e-book)

Copyright 2018 by Koninklijke Brill NV, Leiden, The Netherlands.

Koninklijke Brill NV incorporates the imprints Brill, Brill Hes & De Graaf, Brill Nijhoff, Brill Rodopi, Brill Sense and Hotei Publishing.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, translated, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior written permission from the publisher. Authorization to photocopy items for internal or personal use is granted by Koninklijke Brill NV provided that the appropriate fees are paid directly to The Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Suite 910, Danvers, MA 01923, USA. Fees are subject to change.

This book is printed on acid-free paper and produced in a sustainable manner.

## **CONTENTS\***

<b>Introduction . . . . .</b>	<b>ix</b>
<b>Structure of references . . . . .</b>	<b>xxxvii</b>
<b>Periodicals . . . . .</b>	<b>xxxix</b>
<b>Abbreviations . . . . .</b>	<b>xli</b>
<b>Become a contributor to the <i>Linguistic Bibliography</i> . . . . .</b>	<b>xlii</b>
<b>General works</b>	
3.       Conferences, workshops, meetings . . . . .	1
4.       Festschriften and miscellanies. . . . .	6
4.1.      Festschriften . . . . .	6
<b>General linguistics and related disciplines</b>	
0.2.      History of linguistics, biographical data, organizations . . .	8
0.2.1.     Western traditions . . . . .	8
0.2.1.6.    Nineteenth century . . . . .	8
0.2.1.7.    Twentieth century . . . . .	8
0.2.1.8.    Twenty-first century . . . . .	9
0.2.3.      Biographical data . . . . .	9
0.3.       Linguistic theory and methodology . . . . .	9
0.6.       Applied linguistics . . . . .	9
1.        Phonetics and phonology . . . . .	9
1.1.      Phonetics. . . . .	10
1.1.1.     Articulatory phonetics. . . . .	10

---

\* Please note that this collection is a thematic extract from the *Linguistic Bibliography* annual volumes and that certain sections falling outside of its scope were omitted.

## CONTENTS

1.1.3.	Auditory phonetics . . . . .	10
1.2.	Phonology . . . . .	10
1.2.1.	Suprasegmental phonology (prosody) . . . . .	10
2.	Grammar, morphosyntax . . . . .	10
2.2.	Syntax . . . . .	11
3.	Lexicon (lexicology and lexicography) . . . . .	11
3.2.	Lexicography . . . . .	11
3.2.2.	Plurilingual lexicography . . . . .	11
3.5.	Phraseology, paroemiology . . . . .	12
4.	Semantics and pragmatics . . . . .	12
4.2.	Pragmatics, discourse analysis and text grammar . . . . .	12
9.	Psycholinguistics, language acquisition and neurolinguistics . . . . .	12
9.3.	Language acquisition . . . . .	12
9.3.1.	First language acquisition, child language . . . . .	12
9.3.1.1.	First language acquisition by pre-school children . . . . .	12
9.4.	Neurolinguistics and language disorders . . . . .	13
9.4.2.	Language disorders . . . . .	13
9.4.2.1.	Disorders of language development . . . . .	13
10.	Sociolinguistics and dialectology . . . . .	13
10.1.	Sociolinguistics . . . . .	13
10.1.1.	Language attitudes and social identity . . . . .	14
10.1.2.	Language policy and language planning . . . . .	14
10.2.	Multilingualism, language contact . . . . .	16
10.2.1.	Multilingualism . . . . .	16
10.2.3.	Language contact . . . . .	17
11.	Comparative linguistics . . . . .	17
11.1.	Historical linguistics and language change . . . . .	17
13.	Onomastics . . . . .	17
13.2.	Toponymy . . . . .	17
13.3.	Name studies other than anthroponymy and toponymy . . . . .	17

### Indo-European languages

3.	Indo-Iranian . . . . .	18
3.1.	Indo-Aryan (Indic) . . . . .	18
3.1.3.	Modern Indo-Aryan . . . . .	18
3.1.3.5.	Southern Indo-Aryan (Marathi) . . . . .	18

## CONTENTS

9.	Greek . . . . .	18
9.3.	Modern Greek . . . . .	18
11.	Romance . . . . .	19
11.3.	Gallo-Romance . . . . .	19
11.3.2.	French . . . . .	19
11.3.2.3.	Modern French . . . . .	19
14.	Germanic . . . . .	19
14.3.	West Germanic . . . . .	19
14.3.1.	German . . . . .	19
14.3.1.1.	High German . . . . .	19
14.3.1.1.4.	New High German . . . . .	19
14.3.2.	Dutch . . . . .	19
14.3.2.3.	Modern Dutch . . . . .	20
14.3.3.	Afrikaans . . . . .	20
14.3.5.	English . . . . .	53
14.3.5.4.	Modern English . . . . .	53

### Languages of Mainland Southeast Asia

1.	Sino-Tibetan . . . . .	63
1.2.	Sinitic (Chinese) . . . . .	63
1.2.2.	Modern Chinese . . . . .	63

### Languages of Sub-Saharan Africa

1.	Niger-Congo (Niger-Kordofanian) . . . . .	65
1.7.	Benue-Congo . . . . .	65
1.7.1.	Bantu . . . . .	65
3.	Khoisan . . . . .	94

### Pidgins and Creoles

1.	Romance lexifier pidgins and creoles . . . . .	97
2.	English lexifier pidgins and creoles . . . . .	97
3.	Pidgins and creoles with lexifiers other than Romance and English . . . . .	97

## CONTENTS

### Sign languages

2.	Individual sign languages (except ASL) . . . . .	99
<b>Index of names.</b> . . . . .		<b>101</b>
<b>Index of languages.</b> . . . . .		<b>114</b>
<b>Index of subjects.</b> . . . . .		<b>119</b>

## INTRODUCTION

*Menán du Plessis*

### Opening remarks<sup>1</sup>

The publication of the specially curated *Bibliography of South African Languages* comes at a moment well-timed for reflection, not only on the past ten years of work on South African languages, but more broadly on developments in South African linguistics since the ending of apartheid, now nearly three decades ago. As Marc Greenberg remarks in his introduction to Brill's *Bibliography of Slavic Linguistics*,<sup>2</sup> 'capturing even a decadal slice in the manifold directions in which the field is moving is a fool's errand'. Certainly this is true of South African linguistics as well, and only the broadest contemporary themes can be highlighted here. These notes begin with a description of the linguistic landscape of the southern African region as a whole, and includes discussion of officially recognised languages; the status of post-colonial languages; and other languages spoken in the various countries of the region. The second section offers a brief summary of the history of linguistic studies specifically in South Africa, so as to explain the background against which more recent work may be assessed. The third section touches on the overall pattern of post-apartheid publications; while the fourth focuses more particularly on the past ten years up to the present, identifying some of the major trending topics of the moment.

### The linguistic landscape of the southern African region

For purposes of this overview, southern Africa is taken to mean more or less the region southward of the latitudinal line that lies 15 degrees south of the equator.

---

<sup>1</sup> Thanks to Bonny Sands for useful comments and additional suggestions for references.

<sup>2</sup> <http://bibliographies.brillonline.com/browse/bibliography-of-slavic-linguistics>.

## INTRODUCTION

This immense area includes southern areas of **Angola** and **Mozambique**, and the whole of **Namibia**, **Botswana**, **Zimbabwe**, **South Africa**, **Swaziland** and **Lesotho**. Occasional reference will be made to the southernmost parts of **Zambia** and **Malawi**, and briefly also to **Madagascar** and **Mauritius**.

Three key points to bear in mind throughout the discussion that follows are:

- The transfrontier distributions of most of the region's languages
- The dialectal complexity of individual languages
- The typical multilingualism of individual speakers, particularly in urban centres

The list in the left-hand column in Figure 1 gives some indication of the transfrontier distributions of selected major languages of African origin that are spoken in southern Africa, while the map alongside shows the location of the various countries mentioned in the list or in the course of this introduction. The map also indicates some of the areas used in Guthrie's system of zonal distributions for the NTU (or Bantu)<sup>3</sup> languages (Maho 2009).

### (i) Officially recognised (and for the most part major) languages of the region

The terms 'official' and 'national' are sometimes used in connection with languages as though they are interchangeable. In the case of the southern African countries that give official (constitutional) recognition to a range of languages, the term 'national' may be invoked in the sense only that a particular language is spoken by a significant section of the nation's citizens – not necessarily by everyone, or as a language of national unity. This recognition may embody a formal obligation on the part of the state to provide for and support the use of the acknowledged languages (at least on a regional basis) in contexts such as basic education and the delivery of social services. At the

---

3 It was W. H. G. Bleek (for example 1862: 3) who introduced the use of 'Bantu' as the label for a vast sub-group of related African languages. The term much later acquired derogatory connotations, following its use by white South Africans as a misplaced way of referring to black people. Various alternatives have been proposed (such as Kintu, Sintu or Benue-Congo B), but few have gained traction. By way of compromise, the bare root only is used here, and is also (non-conventionally) written in capital letters, to emphasise its status as an abstract label.

<p>Selected southern African languages of African origin, with names of the countries where they are predominantly spoken</p>	 <p>Satellite image from Google Earth (US Dept of State Geographer, Image Landsat/Copernicus, Data SIO, NOAA, US Navy, NGA, GEBCO (c) 2018 AfriGIS (Pty) Ltd, labelled to show the southern African countries and Guthrie zones referred to alongside or in the body of the text)</p>
<p><b>NTU languages*</b></p>	
<p>Wambo [R20]; Herero [R30] (<i>Angola, Namibia</i>)</p>	
<p>Shona [S10] (<i>Zimbabwe</i>)</p>	
<p>Tsonga [S50] (<i>Mozambique, South Africa</i>)</p>	
<p>Venda [S20] (<i>South Africa</i>)</p>	
<p>Sotho-Tswana [S30] (<i>Tswana, Kgalagadi, N Sotho, S Sotho</i>) (<i>Botswana, Lesotho, South Africa</i>)</p>	
<p>Nguni [S40] (<i>Ndebele, Zulu, Xhosa, Swati</i>) (<i>South Africa, Swaziland, Zimbabwe</i>)</p>	
<p>*Guthrie zones as per Maho (2009)</p>	
<p><b>KHOE, JU, TUU languages</b></p>	
<p>KHOE (Dama, Nama, Giri, Kora; Naro, Khwe,   Gana, Shua, Tshwa) (<i>Angola, Namibia, Botswana, South Africa, Zimbabwe</i>)</p>	
<p>JU (Ju'hoan, !Xun) (<i>Angola, Namibia, Botswana</i>)</p>	
<p>TUU (!Xam, N uu, !Xoon) (<i>Botswana, South Africa</i>)</p>	

Fig. 1. Selected African languages of southern Africa, with a broad indication of present distributions.

same time, for most countries of the region, the *de facto* official language – and sometimes even the formally declared one – is a language of colonial origin.

While they are by no means as rich in linguistic diversity as many other African countries, South Africa and Zimbabwe respectively give official recognition to twelve and sixteen national languages, where the vast majority belong to sub-groups of the immense NTU family (which is itself of course only a sub-division of just one branch of Niger-Congo). The official languages of South Africa,<sup>4</sup> apart from the two post-colonial and locally naturalised languages, English and Afrikaans, are: Tsonga (Shangaan) [S53], Venda [S21], Tswana [S31], Northern Sotho [S32], Sotho [S33], Ndebele [S47], Zulu [S42], Xhosa [S41], and Swati [S43]. In March of this year, South Africa also gave official recognition to South African Sign language (*SA Government News Agency, 2018*).<sup>5</sup>

4 The Constitution of South Africa is available online from: <https://www.gov.za/documents/constitution/constitution-republic-south-africa-1996-1>.

5 Online press release (<https://www.sanews.gov.za/south-africa/sign-language-recognised-home-language>), March 4 2018.

## INTRODUCTION

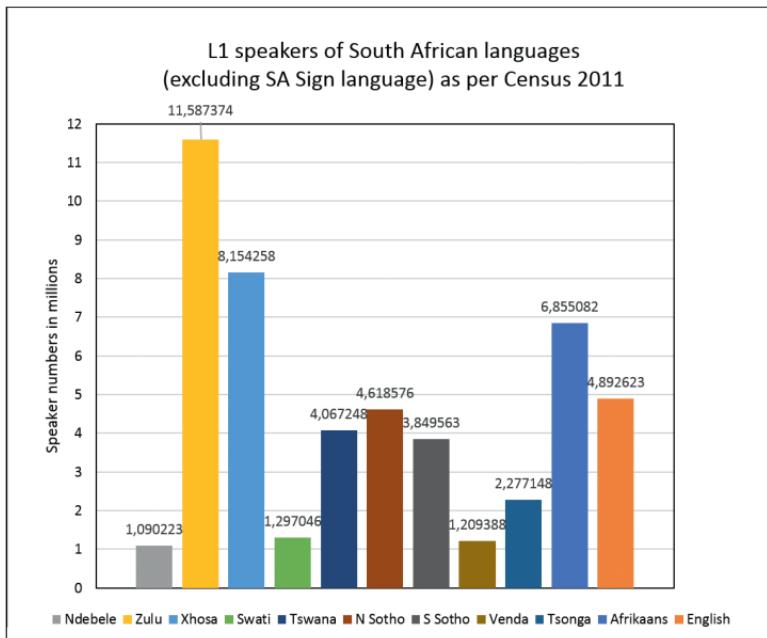


Fig. 2. Numbers of first language speakers of the official languages of South Africa, excluding SA Sign language. The total population of South Africa recorded in 2011 was 51,770,560.

The chart in Figure 2, based on the most recent census figures (*SA Census 2011, Census in Brief: 23*),<sup>6</sup> gives an indication of the numbers of first language speakers for each of the official languages of South Africa, except for SA Sign language.<sup>7</sup> As mentioned at the outset, though, most inhabitants of southern African countries – particularly those who live in urban centres – are multilingual, and

6 Latest census reports for South Africa are available online from: <http://www.statssa.gov.za>

7 Users of SA Sign language were enumerated in the 2011 census at 234,655, which may be an under-reporting, however, given controversies around the use of signing. The number of deaf people in the country is about 600,000 (pers. comm. from Jabaar Mohamed, Provincial Director, DeafSA Western Cape, April 5 2018).

typically speak one or more of the other languages as additional languages, with a variable degree of personal proficiency (Lanham 1978: 17).

Clause 6 of the constitution of Zimbabwe,<sup>8</sup> declares that the officially recognised languages of that country include the following, where the symbols in square brackets allude to Guthrie's distributional zones (as updated Maho 2009):<sup>9</sup> Shona [S11–S14], Ndebele (of Zimbabwe) [S44], and Xhosa [S41]. Further languages given official recognition in Zimbabwe are English, 'Koisan' [so-spelled], and Zimbabwean Sign language.

Article 3 of the constitution of Namibia<sup>10</sup> explicitly declares that English is the official language of the country, even though the most recent census figures indicate that it is spoken as a first language in only 3.4 percent of households. The Namibian document goes on to state that nothing contained in the constitution 'shall prohibit the use of any other language as a medium of instruction'. This means in effect that entry-level schooling may be (and indeed is) offered in Namibian Khoekhoe in the southern part of the country, with English being introduced to young learners a few grades later. In the most recent census (*Namibia Census 2011, Main Report: 172*),<sup>11</sup> the languages enumerated – in addition to English, Afrikaans, German, 'other European', and 'other African' – included: Wambo [R21, R22], Herero [R31], Kavango (various NTU languages), Caprivi (various NTU languages), San (probably varieties of JU and TUU, plus some western Kalahari KHOE),<sup>12</sup> Namibian Khoekhoe (KHOE) and Tswana [S31]. The labels 'Kavango' and 'Caprivi' are rather non-specific, but since they are contrasted with the equally vague term 'San', it is probable that they refer to various NTU languages spoken in the eastward-pointing arm of northern Namibian territory known as the Caprivi Strip. Languages spoken in

---

8 The Constitution of Zimbabwe is available online from: <http://www.zim.gov.zw/constitution>

9 The names of individual languages are given in their commonly accepted Anglicised forms.

10 The Constitution of Namibia is available online from: <https://laws.parliament.na/namibian-constitution/>

11 Latest census reports for Namibia are available online from: <https://nsa.org.na/>

12 The different families subsumed under the label 'Khoisan' are discussed in sub-section (iii).

## INTRODUCTION

the Strip – sections of which are contiguous with Angola, Zambia, Zimbabwe and Botswana – include: Yeyi [R41A], the Botatwe languages [M60] formerly Subiya-Totela [K40]; Fwe [K402], Totela [K41] and Subiya [K40]; (possibly) some varieties of Luyana [K31]; Kavango languages such as Kwangali [K33] and Gciriku (or Manyo) [K331/2]; and Mbukushu [K43].

While the constitution of **Botswana**<sup>13</sup> does not include a language clause, the report for the 2011 census (*Statistics Botswana 2014: 261*)<sup>14</sup> shows that in addition to English and Afrikaans, the languages enumerated included among others: Tswana [S31], Kgalagadi [S311], Herero [R31], Yeyi (of Ngamiland) [R41B], Subiya [K40], Mbukushu [K43], Zezuru [S12], Kalanga (of Botswana) [S16] and Ndebele [S408].

### (ii) A note on the status of post-colonial languages

As remarked above, for most countries of the region, the effective official language of government (and sometimes even the formally declared one) is a language of colonial origin. Throughout the region, access to tertiary education is entirely dependent on competence in one of the former colonial languages, such as English, Portuguese or French.

While English is perhaps most often still acquired only as a second language, other former colonial languages, such as Dutch and French, have long been established as naturalised local languages, with their daughters – in such forms, for example, as Afrikaans and Morisien (the French of **Mauritius**) – widely spoken as first languages by a sizeable proportion of the population in their respective countries. It is probable that some varieties of the Portuguese spoken in **Angola** and **Mozambique**, as well as the French spoken in countries such as **Madagascar**, the **Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC)** and the **Central African Republic (CAR)** are similarly naturalised, although detailed information is not readily available.

At the same time there are ongoing shifts, as in the case of South African English, which seems, at least on anecdotal evidence, to be favoured increasingly as a first language by families whose most recent ancestors spoke Afrikaans or

---

<sup>13</sup> The Constitution of Botswana is available online from: <http://www.gov.bw/en/Tools--Services/Constitution-and-Laws-of-Botswana/>.

<sup>14</sup> Latest census reports for Botswana are available online from: <http://botswana.opendataforafrica.org/thpzhqb/botswana-census-data>.

one of the other South African languages. The great majority of South Africans who can speak English still have it, however, only as a second or third language.<sup>15</sup>

**(iii) Other languages (for the most part minor ones) spoken in the region**

Apart from the languages mentioned above, a number of other languages are spoken in southern African countries today, where most (but not all) are languages of African origin, with present-day distributions that sometimes reflect a long-established status quo of great historical complexity, and at other times reflect migrations of either a recent or not too distant past. Many (but certainly not all) of these are minority languages, in the twin sense of having not only relatively low speaker numbers, but also a generally marginal status in the countries where they are spoken.

The most remarkable of these other languages is perhaps Malagasy, the Austronesian language that functions as one of the official languages of **Madagascar**, along with French. This is one example of a language that is by no means minor, given that varieties of it are spoken as a first language by almost all 18 million Madagascans (*SIL Ethnologue*).<sup>16</sup> Questions such as when, how and why early maritime traders from South-east Asia first settled the island remain the subject of ongoing archaeological, historical and linguistic investigation.

Another intriguing case involves the great diaspora from South Africa that occurred in the second and third decades of the 19<sup>th</sup> century. The reasons for this voluntary exodus are complex, although aggressive colonial incursion is acknowledged to have been a primary impetus. The outcomes of these migrations include the presence today of Ndebele speakers in the Matabeleland region of southern **Zimbabwe**. While it is closely related to varieties of South African Ndebele, the Zimbabwean variety has some features of its own. In **Malawi**, the minor language known as Ngoni [Ni12] is thought to have had a similar origin in the migration of Nguni-speaking people from South Africa. On the other hand, a further group of people known as the Kololo, who spoke a Sotho-like language, migrated to the Barotseland region of the country known

---

<sup>15</sup> Although the term 'Black South African English' is occasionally used to describe the English used as a second language by black South Africans, it does not connote any homogeneous 'variety'. There does not seem to be any single variety of English spoken uniquely by black South Africans who use it as a first language.

<sup>16</sup> All references to the *SIL Ethnologue* are to the online edition (<https://www.ethnologue.com>), at April 6 2018.

## INTRODUCTION

today as **Zambia**, where they conquered local inhabitants who were known as the Lozi (Rozwi or Rotse). The language referred to today as Lozi [K20] reflects a strong Sotho influence. It is now found as a minor language also in Zimbabwe and Botswana (*SIL Ethnologue*). The Luyana dialects [K31] of south-western Zambia may have been part of an original (non-Sotho) Lozi group, but the picture is far from clear.

In more recent times, the situation has begun to reverse, and more and more people from other African countries now migrate to **South Africa**, whether to study, seek work, operate as traders, or buy goods for retailing back at home. Figures in general are unreliable, since immigrants may be uncertain of their legal status and hence reluctant to declare themselves, while many may simply come and go on a regular basis. It is sometimes suggested, however, that the number of expatriate Zimbabweans currently living in South Africa may be over a million. While most are probably speakers of a Ndebele variety, the *SIL Ethnologue* gives a figure of 18,000 for immigrant speakers of Shona in South Africa. Raj Mesthrie (2002:12) mentions the existence in Durban of somewhat older enclaves of people who trace their presence in South Africa back to the 1870s, and who still speak some Makhuwa (Makua) [P30] and Yao [P20]. These are both languages primarily of Mozambique, although they also have cross-border distributions into neighbouring countries.

The diverse Khoisan languages of southern Africa constitute an important section of the region's minority African languages. As most readers are probably aware, the terms 'Khoi' (also 'Khoikhoi' or 'Khoekhoen') and 'San' refer to traditional ethnological rather than any linguistic distinctions. The Khoi, who typically spoke varieties of Khoekhoe KHOE,<sup>17</sup> were herders; while the San, who spoke a wide range of languages, including some that in fact belong to the KHOE family,<sup>18</sup> were mostly restricted to an economic lifestyle

---

<sup>17</sup> The use of capital letters for the names of these different families is not a standard convention, but is adopted here in the interest of clarity. In writing the names of individual languages, it is occasionally necessary to use the current IPA symbol for a click. Although it is generally undesirable to introduce 'exotic' symbols in this way, the languages in question never acquired commonly accepted English versions of their names.

<sup>18</sup> Languages belonging to the Kalahari branch of the KHOE family were referred to by Dorothea Bleek (1927) as 'Central Bushman'. Westphal (1963) re-named them the Tshu-Khwe languages, after the terms commonly used for 'person' in different sub-groups. Vossen (1997) referred

based on hunting and gathering.<sup>19</sup> There are three long-recognised divisions of the Khoisan languages of southern Africa, where these are commonly referred to – in the terms devised by Ernst Westphal (1963) – as KHOE, JU and !Ui-Taa. For the latter, the alternative name TUU has more recently been suggested by Tom Güldemann (2004a). A few re-groupings have been proposed by one or two linguists in recent years, but these remain controversial.<sup>20</sup> The question of a common ancestry for the three families also continues to be debated, and the blanket term 'Khoisan' is currently used only as a general term of convenience.

Representatives of the different families, KHOE, JU and TUU, are today found mainly in **Namibia** and **Botswana**, but to a limited extent also in southern **Angola**, south-western **Zimbabwe**, and **South Africa**. Two unrelated click languages, Hadza and Sandawe, are spoken further afield, in **Tanzania**. (The last two appear to be isolates, however, and no strong evidence has been found to suggest a relation between either of them and any of the Khoisan languages of southern Africa.)

The Khoisan languages spoken in southern **Angola** are varieties of !Xun (JU), and varieties of Khwe (western Kalahari KHOE). In the case of these Angolan languages, it is difficult to obtain a clear sense of speaker numbers. In **Namibia**, the most recent census figures (*Namibia Census 2011 Main Report*: 172) reveal that varieties of Namibian Khoekhoe are spoken in 11 percent of households, out of a total population of just over two million. The number of households where 'San' was spoken amounted to 0.8 percent – where the generic term 'San' probably encompasses languages belonging to the KHOE family, such as Khwe and Naro (both Kalahari branch), as well as varieties from the TUU and JU families.

---

to them as 'non-Khoekhoe Khoë', but this was later replaced by 'Kalahari Khoë' (Güldemann and Vossen 2000).

19 Cruder distinctions between Khoi and San based on colonial perceptions of supposed biological differences are sometimes still alluded to by foreign scholars, but approaches of this kind – even when re-cast as 'genetic studies' – are offensive to South Africans, who view them as the uncritical perpetuation of an older ideology.

20 A link between the JU group and †Amkoe (also known as Eastern †Hoan) has been proposed by Heine and Honken (2010), who offer the name KXA for the unified group. A connection between the KHOE family and the Angolan isolate Kwadi has been proposed by Güldemann (2004b).

## INTRODUCTION

The country with the greatest diversity of Khoisan languages (if not numbers of speakers) is certainly **Botswana**. Despite this, the report for the most recent census in Botswana (*Statistics Botswana 2014*: 261) indicates that in addition to the various other languages enumerated, there was just a single category provided for 'Seserwa'. As Andy Chebanne (2008) pointed out concerning the previous census of 2001, the term 'Seserwa' is merely a catch-all label for numerous different languages spoken by people from those communities formerly referred to collectively (and disparagingly) as 'Masarwa'. These languages include several that belong to the KHOE family, such as varieties of Khwe, Naro, ||Gana-!Gui, Shua and Tshwa (all divisions of Kalahari KHOE), as well as Jul'hoan (JU) and IXoon (Taa TUU). In the latest census, the total number of speakers of 'Seserwa' amounted to just over 31,700, or 1.6 percent of the total Botswana population, which, much like that of Namibia, is a little over two million people.

Khoisan languages in **South Africa** are formally acknowledged in the country's new constitution, where they are mentioned in a sub-clause as minority languages entitled to official support (although the principle is rather undermined by the muddled reference to 'the Khoi, Nama and San languages'). In reality, the only viable Khoisan language still found in South Africa today is the Nama variety (Khoekhoe KHOE) of the far Northern Cape. The exact number of speakers is not known, but is unlikely to be more than 5,000, and is probably far less. It is spoken in addition to Afrikaans and with varying degrees of fluency by only one in four or five elderly people, mainly in Riemvasmaak and the Richtersveld (Witzlack-Makarevich 2006: 12). In recent years, in an attempt to revitalise it, the language has been introduced as a subject at selected junior schools in the area. There were also still (as of April 2018) one or two elderly rememberers of another Khoekhoe variety, namely Kora (Korana or !Ora); as well as three elderly speakers of Nluu (!Ui TUU).

With the ending in 1990 of the Border War, members of various San communities originally from southern Angola had to be relocated to South Africa. This was necessary because some of them had served with the SA military (that is, on the side of the apartheid regime) in the Kavango and Caprivi areas. These refugees include speakers of Khwe dialects (Kalahari KHOE) as well as !Xun dialects (JU) – none of which are indigenous to South Africa.

The constitution of **Zimbabwe** makes a concession to a vaguely denoted 'Koisan language', although the only relevant language still spoken in that country is a variety known as Tcua'o (Tjwao, Tshwao or Tcoao), which belongs to the KHOE family (eastern Kalahari), and had only eight remaining speakers as of March 2018.

A small fraction of the additional minor languages found in southern African countries today are of foreign but non-colonial origin, where these are generally spoken only by recent immigrants.<sup>21</sup> The *SIL Ethnologue* entry for South Africa, for example, includes the following in its list of immigrant languages, with speaker numbers in parentheses: Anglo-Romani (7,900), Arabic (5,000), Dutch (30,000), Mandarin Chinese (10,000), German (45,000) and Yue Chinese (15,000).

### Historical background to linguistic studies in South Africa, 1960 to 1990

From this point onward, the focus of this overview will be limited largely to **South Africa**. There are several comprehensive older surveys (Doke 1945; Doke 1961a; Doke 1961b; Cole 1960; Cole 1971) that more than adequately recount the early history of language studies and linguistics in South Africa, and there is no need to recapitulate them here. The following notes pick up the story from the early 1960s, from the period just over a century after the arrival of Wilhelm Bleek in South Africa in the middle of the 19th century and the commencement of his pioneering work on both N TU and Khoisan languages.

One of the most striking aspects of the work of the earlier South African linguists of the 20th century, exemplified in the work of Clement Doke, is the wide-ranging focus of their work, not merely on languages of their own country, but on languages of the southern African region as a whole. On the whole, this breadth of vision seems to have became steadily narrowed from the 1960s up until the end of the 1980s – in step with the hardening of apartheid, and the increasing ostracism of South Africa by the international community. Nonetheless, there were certainly some notable exceptions to this general trend.

Although the policy of apartheid was officially inaugurated in 1948, the roll-out of the various laws intended to implement it took some time. Beginning in the 1960s, these laws began to bite ever more viciously into society, so that the minority white government found itself increasingly confronted with popular

---

<sup>21</sup> The indentured labourers who were shipped by the British to Natal from India between 1860 and 1911 brought with them various Indic and Dravidian languages, such as Hindi, Urdu, Gujarati and Konkani; and Tamil and Telugu respectively (Mesthrie 2002: 12). These languages are on the wane, if they are still spoken at all. Descendants of these communities speak what is sometimes referred to as 'Indian South African English'.

## INTRODUCTION

resistance and, from 1966 onwards, outright military conflict beyond its borders, with the allied liberation movements of South Africa, Namibia and Angola. It is remarkable that Ernst Westphal was able to carry on conducting fieldwork as freely as he did during the 1960s, travelling throughout countries in the southern African region, and documenting a wide range of languages, both N TU and Khoisan.<sup>22</sup>

Despite the manifest inequities entrenched by apartheid, it was part of the inexorable logic of 'separate but equal development' that African languages should be given full support as languages of education, at least in the early years, during which stage mother-tongue education was believed to be in the best interest of the child.<sup>23</sup> This meant that there should be at very least pedagogic and reference grammars as well as dictionaries available for all of the major African languages spoken in the country; and it may be for this reason that one contemporary survey (Lanham 1978: 16) reported so positively on the development of these languages. R. A. Paroz published one of several revisions and enlargements of the older *Southern Sotho-English Dictionary* of Adolphe Mabille and H. Dieterlin (1961); while a revised and transliterated edition of the *Xhosa-English Dictionary* of J. McLaren (1963) was prepared by W. G. Bennie and J. J. R. Jolobe. Westphal's graduate student Jan Snyman (1970) delivered the first full-length grammatical description of Jul'hoan (JU), and went on to publish a dictionary (Jul'hoan-Afrikaans) in about 1975. Dirk Zervogel and Enos Mabuza (1976) gave us a reference grammar for Swati; and J. A. Louw and J. B. Jubase (1978) delivered one for Xhosa, written in Afrikaans. Meanwhile, Gabriel Nienaber and P. E. Raper (1977, 1980), with admirable disregard for the prejudices of the time, laboured to produce a three-volume work on the Khoekhoe origins of more than 4,000 place-names of South Africa and Namibia.

It was also during the apartheid period that some of the first professional associations representing branches of linguistics in South Africa were

---

22 The bulk of Westphal's field material was never published, but his manuscript notes and recordings have been digitised and are now available online (<http://www.digitalcollections.lib.uct.ac.za>).

23 The policy was then (as it is today) that children should be introduced to either English or Afrikaans from about the third or fourth grade, and that their other subjects should be taught increasingly from then onward in one of those languages. When the apartheid government did away with the choice and made the medium of instruction obligatorily Afrikaans, the resulting fury led to the famous Soweto uprising of 1976.

established. These included, in 1966, SAALT, the South African Association for Language Teaching (publishing the *Journal for Language Teaching*); in 1979, ALASA, the African Language Association of Southern Africa (publishing the *South African Journal of African Languages*); and in 1980, SAALA, the Southern African Applied Linguistics Association, and LSSA, the Linguistics Society of South Africa (publishing *Southern African Linguistics and Applied Language Studies*).<sup>24</sup>

The 1980s were a paradoxical time for South African linguistics. On one hand, some breakthrough scholarly work appeared. For example, D. K. Rycroft (1981) published a dictionary for Swati; Alan Barnard (1985) published his wordlist for Naro (Kalahari KHOE); and Anthony Traill (1985) published his landmark study of the phonetics and phonology of !Xoon (Taa TUU family). E. J. M. Baumbach (1987) published his *Analytical Tsonga Grammar*; and Nienaber (1989) continued to produce encyclopaedic work on aspects of the old Cape Khoekhoe dialects.

On the other hand, it was only now, at the very late date of 1983, that one of the country's leading universities finally established a department of linguistics. Throughout the country, linguists at the better universities (which were typically those reserved for 'white people') tended to focus almost exclusively on varieties of English or Afrikaans. This somewhat self-absorbed approach was perhaps partly in response to the growing exclusion of South Africa at this time from the international academic community. What is more, and reflecting a similar parochialism, almost every grandly styled 'department of African languages' of this period typically offered only one or two languages! (As most linguists are aware, Africa is home to perhaps as many as 2000 languages.)

And it was all at this very same time that mass resistance to apartheid was swelling within the country into a hugely dynamic movement. Rallies with thousands upon thousands of participants became regular events, and there can hardly have been a university that did not experience tear gas drifting across its lawns, or did not have to cope with violent clashes between its own students and invading police in full riot gear. Towards the close of the decade, it was clear that the end of apartheid was in sight; and suddenly it seemed possible to start imagining a transformed academia in South Africa – one that would be less turned in on itself, and more reflective of a greater, African identity.

---

<sup>24</sup> First published in 1980 – but as volume 18, since it represented the amalgamation of two older journals, *South African Journal of Linguistics* (LSSA) and *Southern African Journal of Applied Language Studies* (SAALA).

## INTRODUCTION

### South African linguistics in the post-apartheid era

There have undoubtedly been some high points in the study of southern African languages over the past two or three decades. The level of academic productivity is even high enough that it becomes invidious to single out any particular authors while overlooking others! It is unlikely, though, that anyone will begrudge the special mention of a few selected publications. Work on South African languages that particularly springs to mind include the reference grammar for Venda (Poulos 1990); the first combined version of the older English–Zulu and Zulu–English dictionaries (Doke, Malcolm, Sikakana, Vilakazi 1990); and the study by L. J. Louwrens (1991) of Northern Sotho grammar. The dictionary of !Xoon (TUU family, Taa branch) compiled by Traill (1994) also appeared at this time. George Poulos and Christian Msimang (1998) gave us a new reference grammar for Zulu; and the monumental three volumes of the *Greater Dictionary of Xhosa*, which was many years in the making, steadily appeared between 1989 and 2006 (Tshabe, Shoba, Mini and others).

An exciting development of a different kind occurred in the early 1990s, with the unexpected discovery (Crawhall 2003) of about two dozen elderly people who still spoke one of the !Ui languages (TUU) of South Africa. A call for linguists to assist with its documentation drew swift responses from overseas, and the main work on this language over the next decade and a half was conducted largely by scholars from Germany and America.

The chart presented in Figure 3 is based on data extracted from Brills's *Linguistic Bibliography*, and gives a picture of linguistic publications from South Africa over the past three decades. While it is not possible to make a direct comparison with the linguistic output of the immediately preceding decades, certainly the overall number of publications is cause for some celebration; and it is particularly gratifying that work on SA Sign language reflects a steady uptick throughout the three decades shown.

At the same time, sheer quantity of publications is by no means the only or even necessarily the best indicator of the health of a field. Departments of linguistics remain marginalised at most universities throughout South Africa today, and most are underfunded and understaffed. Why linguistics should have this status is not clear, but it may in part reflect a global trend.<sup>25</sup> The genuine

---

<sup>25</sup> The period of South Africa's transition to the post-apartheid era coincided with the worldwide economic recession of 1990 to 1991, while the middle decade of the new era coincided with a second great recession from 2007 to 2009. South African universities responded to these economic crises

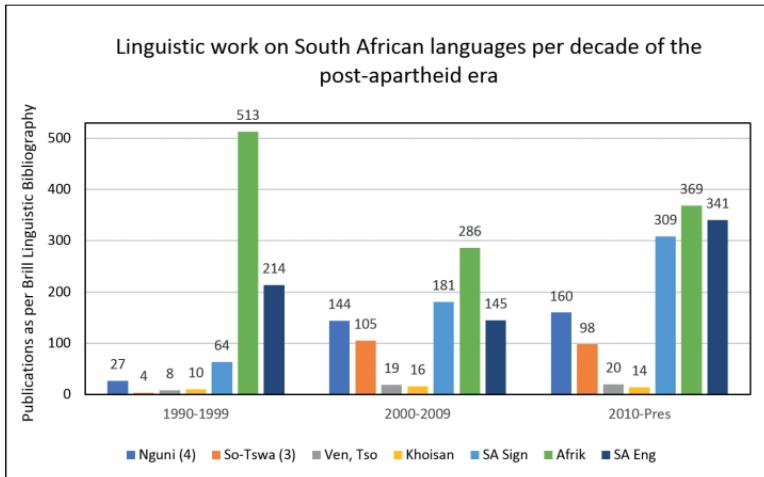


Fig. 3. Linguistic publications on languages of South Africa, including SA Sign language, for each decade of the post-apartheid period. (Figures used to draw the chart were extracted from the *Linguistic Bibliography*.) Note that Venda and Tsonga are grouped together not because of any particularly close relationship, but purely because they both have relatively few speaker numbers. For purposes of this chart, the term 'Khoisan' covers only South African Khoisan languages – effectively Khoekhoe varieties of the KHOE family, and Nluu, from the !Ui branch of the TUU family. There is a minor dip in academic output in the middle decade of this period, but this may simply reflect natural fluctuation – if it was not a response to the economic recession of the same period.

struggle of linguistics departments to survive may at least partly explain the most worrisome aspect of the publications profile charted in Figure 3 – namely,

---

by imitating the managerialist approaches adopted by academic institutions elsewhere in the world. It was suddenly demanded of academics that they should prove their worth by pushing up their publications rate, even if this meant sacrificing quality; while departments with low student enrolments (which typically included departments of linguistics) found themselves in the firing line, and if they could not adapt expediently – for example, by devising offerings with greater mass appeal – faced incorporation into other departments, or attrition of their already few posts.

## INTRODUCTION

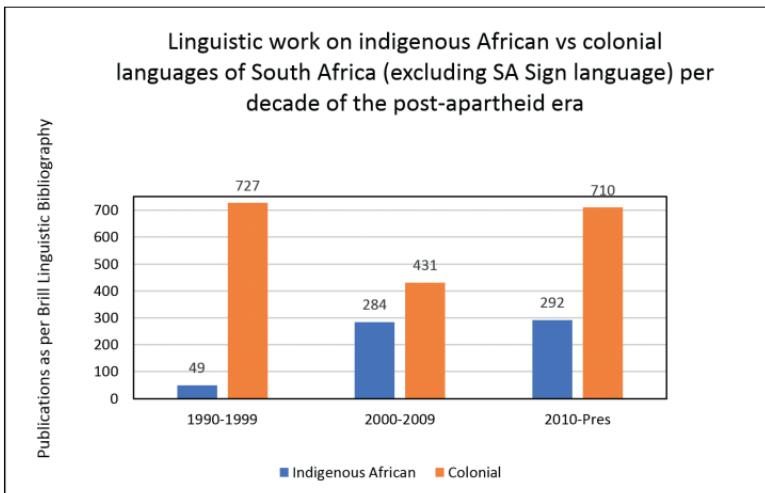


Fig. 4. Comparison in terms of publications output between linguistic work on languages of African origin and post-colonial languages of South Africa. For purposes of this chart, only work on Khoisan languages of South Africa is included in the columns for indigenous African languages – effectively Khoekhoe varieties of the KHOE family, and Nluu, from the !Ui branch of the TUU family. (Figures used to draw the chart were extracted from the *Linguistic Bibliography*.)

the stark disparity between linguistic work on the two post-colonial languages, and work on the nine official languages of African origin. This imbalance – the first of three that are noticed in this overview – is depicted more clearly in Figure 4.

To put it bluntly, what seems to have occurred is the persistence of an old order that privileged the study, on the part of largely white academics, of the two post-colonial languages.

This is not at all to disparage the work that focuses on varieties of South African English and Afrikaans. These are by no means exclusively 'white' languages, and some of the studies in fact examine precisely the complex issues of social identity that can arise as a consequence. The linguistic work on these languages reflects a range of contemporary approaches, and is sometimes even at the leading edge of particular theoretical frameworks, such as generative syntax. The fact that English and Afrikaans are both West Germanic languages

also means that there is greater scope for international collaboration, which further enhances the quality and reach of some of this work. Most emphatically, no-one would want to wish any of this away. On the other hand, equally, there are most certainly examples of fine recent work on local African languages – some of it produced by linguists who are themselves speakers of indigenous African languages. The issue is simply that there is so much less of the latter.

The reasons for this imbalance are no doubt complex, but surely include the reality that departments of African languages at South African universities (with Unisa a notable exception) continue to focus – just as they did during the apartheid era – on only one or two languages, and continue to be understaffed,<sup>26</sup> with faculty being tasked mainly with teaching the languages in question, along with their associated literatures.

With the cessation of the Border War in 1990, the door was suddenly opened for many more linguists to return to areas of southern Africa that had been largely inaccessible for many decades. A number of foreign scholars were quick to take advantage of the opportunity, and the Khoisan languages rapidly became a particular focus of renewed attention. The resulting steady surge in publications is reflected in Figure 5.

One aspect of the Khoisan work not directly evident from the chart is the predominance of authorship by linguists from overseas countries as opposed to Namibia or South Africa. This is a second worrying imbalance in the overall picture of contemporary South African linguistics,<sup>27</sup> and seems in part to reflect the general contraction of local scholarly interest in countries beyond South Africa itself.

---

26 It is not unusual, even at some of the country's leading universities, to find a department for a single European language that has a larger complement of faculty than the department for the languages of an entire continent.

27 There is nothing wrong with having so many foreign linguists working in this particular sub-field: quite to the contrary, international collaboration is always greatly to be desired. In a field as small as this one, however, differences between foreign and local linguists in respect of mindset and historical awareness may lead to irreconcilable differences of approach that inhibit rather than promote international collaboration.

**Linguistic publications on Khoisan languages of southern Africa per decade of the post-apartheid era**

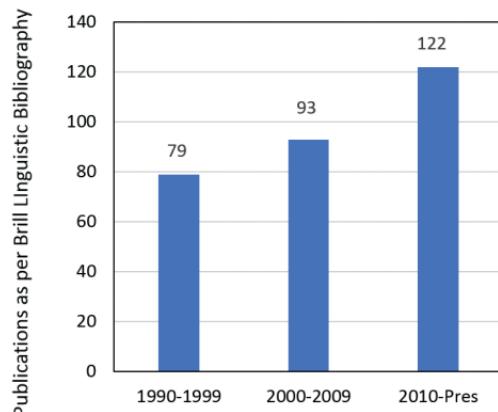


Fig. 5. Growth in the number of linguistic publications on Khoisan languages throughout southern Africa since the end of the apartheid era. The figures used to draw this chart have been extracted from the *Linguistic Bibliography*, and reflect work carried out for the most part by foreign scholars, although the chart does not indicate this specifically.

### Trending themes

Work in South African linguistics over the past decade reflects a wide range of academic pre-occupations and approaches, where some are emerging, and others reflect the rapid development and expansion of established areas of research. As far as research preoccupations are concerned, one that stands out, and has already been commented on, is the burgeoning field of SA Sign language research. Most of the currently dominant themes, however, emerge almost inevitably from the multilingual character of the South African linguistic landscape, and for the most part build on foundations laid down in a previous era. The languages investigated are in many cases still only local, but

are slowly beginning once again to include languages spoken by people from neighbouring countries.

One of the broad themes that emerges from the characteristic multilingualism of the country concerns aspects of language acquisition. A *psycholinguistic* approach is typically adopted in studies that focus on aspects of acquisition in bilingual or multilingual environments, where this can include natural acquisition in early childhood, as well as formal or informal secondary acquisition both at school and later on in adulthood. Ongoing attention is also being paid to aspects of language in education, such as the complexities of the multilingual classroom, the role of the child's mother tongue in early learning, and best strategies for the introduction of a second language intended to be used as the primary language of learning.

In the context of education, work in psycholinguistics and *applied linguistics* has taken on a grave urgency, with the alarming findings of a recent international survey that 78 per cent of Grade 4 children in South Africa cannot read for meaning in *any* language, including their own mother tongue, where the South African results were the lowest out of 50 countries surveyed (Spaull 2017).<sup>28</sup> Recently presented preliminary evidence (Spaull, Pretorius and Mohohlwane 2018) suggests that the disjunctive system of writing used for the Sotho-Tswana languages may be a factor contributing to the slow acquisition of reading skills.

A further factor contributing to the problem (apart from the poor training of teachers) is the general lack of a reading culture in most sectors of South African society. This is in no small part because of the lack of a wide range of appealing reading material, including books for children, in languages other than English and Afrikaans (Aitchison 2018).<sup>29</sup> The equal development of all South African languages is viewed as a national priority,<sup>30</sup> and a number of research chairs

---

28 "The unfolding reading crisis: the new PIRLS 2016 results," commentary published online, December 5 2017, at: <https://nicspaull.com/2017/12/05/the-unfolding-reading-crisis-the-new-pirls-2016-results/>.

29 "South Africa's reading crisis is a cognitive catastrophe," commentary published online, February 26 2018, at: <https://theconversation.com/south-africas-reading-crisis-is-a-cognitive-catastrophe-89052>.

30 The Pan-South African Language Board (PANSALB) is constitutionally mandated to oversee the equal development of all South African languages.

## INTRODUCTION

have recently been endowed, in the hope that ways will be found to foster this.<sup>31</sup> Until more original material is produced, there is a world of literature waiting to be translated, and a welcome initiative over the past few decades has been the inauguration at several universities of postgraduate programs in *translation studies*. Equally helpful has been the publication of new dictionaries, some of them intended specifically for use in schools, such as the *Oxford Bilingual School Dictionaries* series published between 2007 and 2014 for each of the South African languages. These have been prepared by *lexicographic units* based at universities around the country. (The African Association for Lexicography (Afrilex), which was established in 1995, publishes *Lexikos*, an open access (free to read) journal.)<sup>32</sup>

It is difficult, however – even without undertaking a formal bibliometric analysis – not to form an impression that current research interests in South African linguistics overwhelmingly reflect a *sociolinguistic* bias. This focus is brought to bear on such topics as the negotiation of multilingual environments, whether in a permanent neighbourhood or at a border crossing; or whether in the workplace,<sup>33</sup> at a hospital or clinic, or even in a court of law. Attention is also commonly given to the broad theme of language and identity, sometimes in sociophonetic studies of accent and class, but particularly in studies of new and often ephemeral urban varieties, such as Sepitori (Pretoria Sotho or Tswana) and Isicamtho, which feature agile code-switching, and are perhaps most often used as a kind of insider register by members of a young and 'hip' generation. Possible contact effects and the influence on these varieties of more recent immigrants is another area of investigation.

---

31 It would be remiss not to mention that the national broadcaster provides programming in all South African languages, for both radio and television. One of the informal ways in which the country's indigenous languages are being promoted is through the popular 'soaps', which not uncommonly reflect spontaneous (character-appropriate) switching between two or three different languages. Popular music also plays a role.

32 *Lexikos* is found at: <http://lexikos.journals.ac.za/pub>.

33 The Zulu-lexified pidgin known as Fanakolo was at one time used on South African mines at the insistence of white bosses who were unable to cope with the diversity of languages spoken by the workers. Its use was always considered demeaning, and it has now been phased out (*Chamber of Mines Annual Report 2011*: 72).

The issue of identity is also addressed in current studies of Afrikaaps, a variety of Cape Afrikaans similarly characterised by code-switching. It is possible, however, that the latter falls rather into the spectrum of Afrikaans dialects and that this kind of research effectively comes under the heading of *dialectology* or variation studies. The recognition of different varieties of Afrikaans goes back several decades (Van Rensburg 1983), but is an area of study that continues to grow. Hans den Besten (2012) contributed pioneering work in which he postulated the existence of an early Cape Pidgin, some form of which he believed could have contributed to the development of Afrikaans. Research continues into the possible substrate role of Cape Khoekhoe languages in the emergence of Afrikaans.

Work on varieties of the African languages spoken in southern Africa has a long history. For example, Doke's report (1931) on the *Unification of the Shona Dialects* necessarily included discussion of the numerous dialects constituting each of the six languages (Korekore, Zezuru, Karanga, Manyika, Ndau, Kalanga) that ideally needed to be reconciled for the creation of a standardised 'Shona language'. D. F. van der Merwe and Isaac Schapera (1943) contributed a comparative study of Kgalagadi, and Kwena and other dialects of Tswana; while Cole (1955: xv–xx) supplied further information about the Tswana dialects. Philippus van Dyk (1960) presented a dissertation on the Nguni dialect, Lala; while Ngubane (1992) presented one on another Nguni dialect, the Tembe-Thonga of KwaZulu-Natal. Simon Donnelly (2007) gave us a dissertation on Phuthi, which is evidently a variety of Nguni that has undergone extensive Sotho influence. Useful discussion of the subject is included in an overview of the Bantu languages by Robert Herbert and Richard Bailey (2002).

Another class of varieties previously much studied in South Africa was associated with members of certain social tiers, and could involve the use of lexical substitutions as well as alterations in syntax (Kunene 1971: 144, fn 2). Special registers (or 'auxiliary codes') of this kind were in fact once widely used throughout much of older Africa (Storch 2011). In South Africa, the term for the custom as formerly observed by wives or young male initiates meant 'to show respect' (Zulu *ukuhlonipha* and Sotho *ho hlonepho*). Similar codes were used, however, by a range of other groups, such as hunters, herbalists, soldiers or courtiers. The waning use of such registers in modern South Africa (Finlayson 2004) probably accounts for a corresponding decline in research on the topic.

Insights arrived at from studies of synchronic variation as well as the effects of contact and other social phenomena (including the use of auxiliary codes) undoubtedly have the capacity to add depth and a texture of realism to diachronic studies. This makes it regrettable that the emerging field of

## INTRODUCTION

sociohistorical linguistics so seldom features as an area of current research interest in South African linguistics.<sup>34</sup>

There are certainly some fine South African scholars working on core aspects of *fundamental linguistic description*. Their work is typically presented during the annual South African Microlinguistics Workshops (SAMWOP), and is often later published in *Stellenbosch Papers in Linguistics (SPIL)*.<sup>35</sup> Unfortunately, these linguists constitute a rather small minority, while those who are applying such approaches to African languages, as opposed to post-colonial ones, form an even smaller sub-set. A further worrisome detail that may not be immediately apparent, but which becomes evident on a closer look at the literature itself, is that much of the leading edge research – such as work that uses a generative framework to investigate aspects of the syntax of an African language – has not been contributed by South African linguists at all, but rather by foreign scholars.

The overall disproportion in the distribution of research effort is the third imbalance observed in this overview. In short, there appears – at least on the face of things – to be an unduly great emphasis placed on sociolinguistics,<sup>36</sup> with rather less emphasis on psycholinguistics, and still less on the fundamentals of linguistic description. Diminished attention to core aspects of descriptive linguistics may well be another factor playing into the decline of capacity that has largely excluded South African linguists from playing their part in efforts to document the numerous minority and threatened languages of southern Africa. (Much like sociohistorical linguistics, the specialised branch of documentary linguistics is effectively non-existent in South Africa today.)

When it comes to entirely new approaches, it is safe to say that most reflect the possibilities steadily opening up for linguistics in the digital age. Locally developed *lexicographic software* such as TshwaneLex,<sup>37</sup> for example, has been

---

34 This branch of linguistics has much to offer to scholars from entirely different fields, such as history and archaeology. South African historians show regrettably little inclination to take advantage of this, however.

35 *SPIL* is published online (<http://spil.journals.ac.za/pub>) and is fully open access (free to publish, free to read).

36 No-one would want to do away altogether with the sociolinguistic work, which has the capacity to reward us with occasionally rich insights into the complexities of current social dynamics.

37 The TshwaneLex software was developed by David Joffe and Gilles-Maurice de Schryver.

used in the compilation of some of the dictionaries mentioned earlier; while scholars working in the domain of *computational linguistics* are developing software with the capacity to recognise local languages, as well as automatically parse and translate them. Digital databases of tagged and searchable corpora have already begun to serve as the basis for research; and it is likely that social media and messaging platforms will increasingly be mined for data on the range of languages, varieties, registers, and shorthand conventions used by South Africans in different contexts.

The establishment of electronic data repositories at universities around the country has been identified as a national priority, and, in a most welcome development, a repository specifically for the storage of language data (SADI<sub>L</sub>AR) has now been created at North- West University. Those linguists (almost all of them foreign) who have been working to document threatened and minority languages in southern Africa have long been in search of an acceptable regional archive for their data. The new repository is a possible solution, even though it was envisaged as a home for linguistic corpora, and is not primarily designed to function as an archive.<sup>38</sup> Fortunately, the linguists engaged in setting up SADI<sub>L</sub>AR have been open to communications and suggestions, so that it may yet come to serve as a greatly needed archive for endangered languages of the southern African region.

### Conclusion

While South African linguistics has been slow to recover from the general crimping that occurred during the apartheid era, there have nevertheless been some encouraging and even exciting developments, particularly in the areas of research focusing on local sign languages, and computational linguistics. Three troubling imbalances have been observed, however, in the course of this overview. Recapitulated, they are:

- The stark disparity between the amount of linguistic work on the two post-colonial languages, and work on the nine official languages of African origin
- The near absence of recent work by local (as opposed to foreign) linguists on languages of the broader southern African region, and Khoisan languages in particular

---

38 It is also not specifically structured to accommodate the kinds of access (or restrictions) that may be required by communities; and in addition is currently limited to the official languages of South Africa.

## INTRODUCTION

- The unduly great emphasis seemingly placed on sociolinguistics, and the lesser emphasis placed on psycholinguistics and applied linguistics, as well as core aspects of fundamental descriptive linguistics

Linguistics is of course a 'broad church', and it is unwise to place too much emphasis on one branch of the field at the expense of others. Psycholinguistics and applied linguistics undoubtedly have a key role to play in the continuing reconstruction of the country, for example in helping to address the dire crisis in South African education. Given the urgency, there is at good reason to hope that more funding will be channelled in future to those researchers engaged in this critical work.<sup>39</sup>

It is also encouraging to note that since about 2010, the different professional bodies have increasingly held joint conferences, while in a further welcome development, early in 2018, the LSSA and SAALA were merged. The draft constitution<sup>40</sup> of the amalgamated body defines the association's field of focus as the 'promotion and co-ordination of the research, study and teaching, in southern Africa, of linguistics, applied linguistics, and applied language studies.' The statement of objectives includes the following:

Bearing in mind the historical legacies of apartheid and colonialism in southern Africa, to promote transformation of the Society and its area of focus at least in terms of research, curriculum, practice and range of languages covered, in ways which promote equity of participation and access, strengthen the linguistic disciplines and empower practitioners, researchers, teachers and learners of these disciplines to develop tools to explore the full range of linguistic environments that they find themselves in.

Lastly, one of the new research chairs mentioned earlier is at Rhodes University, and it was from the African Language Studies Section in the School of Languages and Literatures at that university that the equally encouraging impetus came

---

39 It was found during the 2011 census (*Census in Brief*: 48) that, of about 31 million South Africans aged 20 years and older, more than 10 million had only 'some secondary level' schooling, while another 6,5 million had either 'some primary' or no schooling at all. Only 8,8 million had completed secondary school.

40 At April 2018 the draft document was still open for comment and had yet to be ratified.

for CLASA 2017, or the Conference of the Language Associations of Southern Africa, which constituted a joint gathering of all the professional bodies. Since indabas of this kind typically attract colleagues from neighbouring countries, the promise exists that South African linguists will in future enter more and more into transfrontier collaborations, and will return to work once again on languages of the greater southern region of Africa, with renewed attention to languages of African origin.

## References

Barnard, Alan. 1985. *Nharo Wordlist*. (Department of African Languages Occasional Publications No. 2.) Durban: University of Natal.

Baumbach, E. J. M. 1987. *Analytical Tsonga Grammar*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Bleek, Wilhelm H. G. 1862. *A Comparative Grammar of South African Languages*, Pt 1. London: Trübner & Co.

Bleek, Dorothea. 1927. "The distribution of Bushman languages in South Africa," in *Festschrift Meinhof* (Hamburg: Augustin), 55–64.

Chebanne, Andy Monthusi. 2008. "A sociolinguistic perspective of the indigenous communities of Botswana," *African Study Monographs* 29(3): 93–118.

Cole, Desmond T. 1955. *An Introduction to Tswana Grammar*. Cape Town: Longman.

Cole, Desmond T. 1960. "African linguistic studies, 1943–1961," *African Studies* 19(4): 219–229.

Cole, Desmond T. 1971. "The history of African linguistics to 1945," in Thomas Sebeok (Ed.), *Linguistics in Sub-Saharan Africa* (Current trends in linguistics Vol 7) (The Hague: Mouton), 1–29.

Crawhall, Nigel. 2003. "The rediscovery of lNuu and the †Khomani land claim process, South Africa," in Joe Blythe and R. McKenna Brown (Eds), *Maintaining the Links: Language, identity and the land: Proceedings of the Seventh Foundation for Endangered Languages Conference* (Bristol: Foundation for Endangered Languages), 13–19.

Den Besten, Hans (Ed. Ton van den Wouden). 2012. *Roots of Afrikaans: Selected writings of Hans den Besten*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.

Doke, Clement M. 1931. *Report on the Unification of the Shona Dialects*. Hertford: Stephen Austin and Sons.

Doke, Clement M. 1945. *Bantu: Modern grammatical, phonetical, and lexicographical studies since 1860*. London: International African Institute.

Doke, Clement M. 1961a. "The earliest records of Bantu," in Clement M Doke and Desmond Cole (Eds), *Contributions to the History of Bantu Linguistics* (Johannesburg: Wits Press), 1–7.

## INTRODUCTION

Doke, Clement M. 1961b. "Bantu language pioneers of the nineteenth century," in Doke and Cole (Eds), 27–53.

Doke, Clement M., D. M. Malcolm, J. M. A. Sikakana and B. W. Vilakazi. 1990. *English-Zulu, Zulu-English Dictionary*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Donnelly, Simon. 2007. "Aspects of Tone and Voice in Phuthi." Urbana-Champaign: University of Illinois, PhD Thesis.

Finlayson, Rosalie. 2004. "Language and culture in South Africa," in Andries W. Oliphant, Peter Delius and Lalou Meltzer (Eds), *Democracy X: Marking the present, re-presenting the past* (Pretoria: Unisa Press), 219–231.

Greenberg, Marc L. 2015. "Introduction," in Sijmen Tol and René Genis (Eds), *Bibliography of Slavic linguistics 2000-2014. Vol. I-III* (Leiden: Brill), xxv–xxxviii. Available at: <http://bibliographies.brillonline.com/browse/bibliography-of-slavic-linguistics>

Güldemann, Tom. 2004a. "TUU – a new name for the Southern Khoisan family." Leipzig: University of Leipzig, Institut für Afrikanistik.

Güldemann, Tom. 2004b. "Reconstruction through 'deconstruction': the marking of person, gender, and number in the Khoë family and Kwadi," *Diachronica* 21(2): 251–306.

Güldemann, Tom and Rainer Vossen. 2000. "Khoisan," in Bernd Heine and Derek Nurse (Eds), *African Languages: an introduction* (Cambridge: CUP), 99–122.

Heine, Bernd and Henry Honken. 2010. "The Kx'a Family: a new Khoisan genealogy," *Journal of Asian and African Studies* 79: 5–36.

Herbert, Robert K. and Richard Bailey. 2002. "The Bantu languages: sociohistorical perspectives," in Rajend Mesthrie (Ed.), *Language in South Africa* (Cambridge: CUP), 50–78.

Kunene, Daniel. 1971. *Heroic Poetry of the Basotho*. Oxford: OUP.

Lanham, L. W. 1978. "An outline history of the languages of southern Africa," in L. W. Lanham and K. P. Prinsloo (Eds), *Language and Communication Studies in South Africa* (Cape Town: OUP), 13–28.

*Linguistic Bibliography*. Available at: [www.linguisticbibliography.com](http://www.linguisticbibliography.com) [Consulted in March 2018].

Louw, J. A. and J. B. Jubase. 1978. *Handboek van Xhosa*. Johannesburg: Educum.

Louwrens, L. J. 1991. *Aspects of Northern Sotho Grammar*. Pretoria: Via Afrika.

Mabille, Adolphe and H. Dieterlin (Rev. R. A. Paroz). 1961. *Southern Sotho-English Dictionary (South African orthography)*. Morija: Morija Sesuto Book Depot.

Maho, Jouni. 2009. *NUGL Online: The online version of the New Updated Guthrie List, a referential classification of the Bantu languages*. Available at: <https://www.linguisticbibliography.com>

brill.com/fileasset/downloads\_products/35125\_Bantu-New-updated-Guthrie-List.pdf.

McLaren, J (rev. W. G. Bennie and J. J. R. Jolobe). 1963. *A New Concise Xhosa-English Dictionary*. Cape Town: Longmans Southern Africa.

Mesthrie, Rajend. 2002. "South Africa: a sociolinguistic overview," in Mesthrie (Ed.), *Language in South Africa* (Cambridge: CUP), 11–26.

Ngubane, Sihawukele. 1992. "The Northern Zululand dialects." Durban: University of Natal, MA Thesis.

Nienaber, Gabriel S. 1989. *Khoe khoense Stamname: 'n voorlopige verkenning*. Pretoria, Cape Town: Academica,

Nienaber, Gabriel S, and P. E. Raper. 1977, 1980. *Toponymica Hottentotica* (3 vols). Pretoria: Human Sciences Research Council.

Poulos, George. 1990. *A Linguistic Analysis of Venda*. Pretoria: Via Afrika.

Poulos, George and Christian Msimang. 1998. *A Linguistic Analysis of Zulu*. Cape Town: Via Afrika.

Rycroft, D. K. 1981. *Concise SiSwati Dictionary*. Pretoria: Van Schaik Publishers.

Snyman, Jan. 1970. *An Introduction to the !Xū (Kung) language*. (Communication of the UCT School of African Studies.) Cape Town: A. A. Balkema.

Snyman, Jan. c. 1975. *Zul'�həasi Fonologie en Woordeboek*. Cape Town: A. A. Balkema.

Spaull, Nic, E. Pretorius and N. Mohohlwane. 2018. "Investigating the comprehension iceberg: developing empirical benchmarks for early grade reading in agglutinating African languages." RESEP Working Paper Series No. WP01/2018, available at: (<http://resep.sun.ac.za/index.php/research-outputs/stellenbosch-working-papers/2018-2/>).

Storch, Anne. 2011. *Secret Manipulations: Language and context in Africa*. Oxford: OUP.

Tshabe, Sonwabo Lungile, F. M. Shoba, Buyiswa Mavis Mini, H. W. Pahl, A. M. Pienaar, and T. A. Ndungane. 2006. *The Greater Dictionary of IsiXhosa* (3 vols). Alice: University of Fort Hare.

Traill, Anthony. 1985. *Phonetic and Phonological Studies of !XOO Bushman*. Hamburg: Helmut Buske.

Traill, Anthony. 1994. *A !Xóó Dictionary*. Cologne: Rüdiger Köppe.

Van der Merwe, D. F. and Isaac Schapera. 1943. "A comparative study of Kgalagadi, Kwena and other Sotho dialects." (Communication of the UCT School of African Studies.) Cape Town: UCT.

Van Dyk, Philippus. 1960. "n Studie van Lala: Sy fonologie, morfologie en sintaksis." Stellenbosch: Stellenbosch University, PhD Thesis.

Van Rensburg, M. C. J. 1983. "Nie-standaardvorme, variasiepatrone en Afrikaans uit die vorige eeu," in G. N. Claassen and M. C. J. van Rensburg (Eds),

## INTRODUCTION

*Taalverskeidenheid: 'n blik op die spektrum van taalvariasie in Afrikaans* (Pretoria, Cape Town: Academica), 134–161.

Vossen, Rainer. 1997. *Die Khoe-Sprachen: Ein Beitrag zur Erforschung der Sprachgeschichte Afrikas*. Cologne: Rüdiger Köppe.

Westphal, Ernst O. J. 1963. "The linguistic prehistory of southern Africa: Bush, Kwadi, Hottentot and Bantu linguistic relationships," *Africa* 33: 237–265.

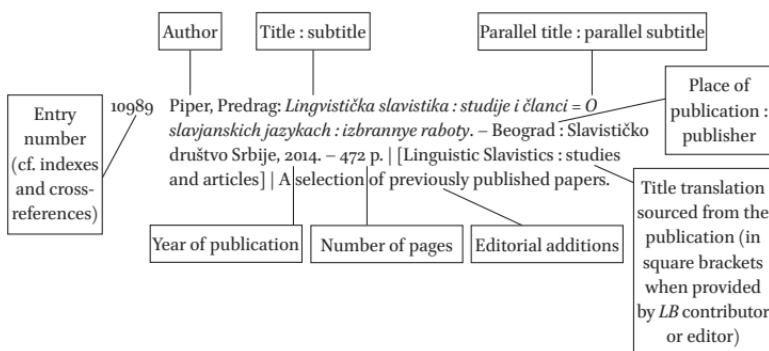
Witzlack-Makarevich, Alena. 2006. "Aspects of Information Structure in Richtersveld Nama." Leipzig: University of Leipzig, MA Thesis.

Ziervogel, Dirk and Enos John Mabuza. 1976. *A Grammar of the Swati Language*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

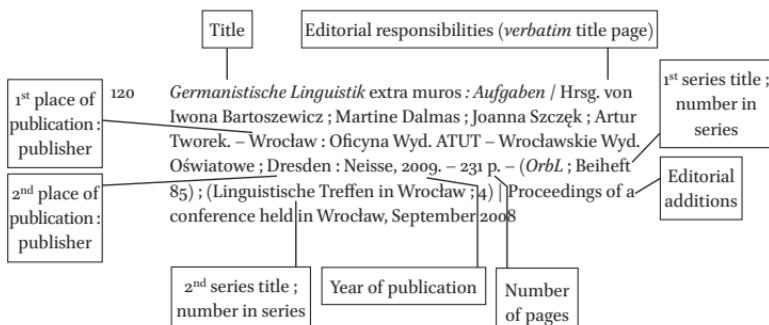
# STRUCTURE OF REFERENCES

## Books

### 1. Monographs



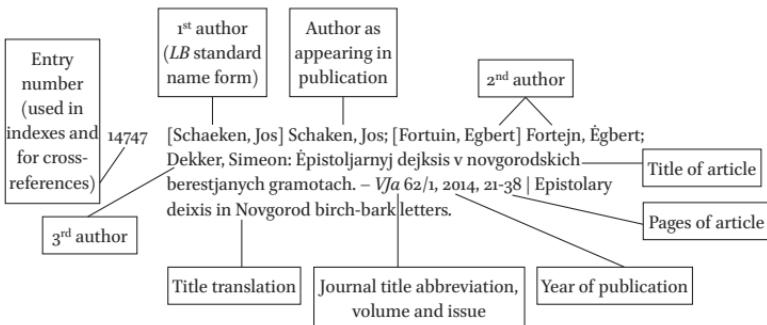
### 2. Edited volumes



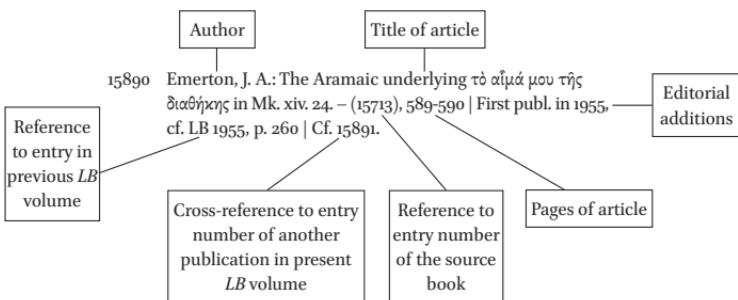
## STRUCTURE OF REFERENCES

### Articles

#### 1. In a periodical



#### 2. In an edited volume



## PERIODICALS

This list contains the full titles and abbreviations of periodicals used in this volume. The complete list of periodicals covered in the *Linguistic Bibliography* may be consulted at <http://bibliographies.brillonline.com/pages/lb/periodicals>.

*AUW* Acta Universitatis Wratislaviensis. Wrocław. ISSN: 0239-6661.

*EWW* English world-wide : a journal of varieties of English. Amsterdam. ISSN: 0172-8865. eISSN: 1569-9730.

*FL* Functions of language. Amsterdam. ISSN: 0929-998X. eISSN: 1569-9765.

*FLang* First language. London. ISSN: 0142-7237. eISSN: 1740-2344.

*Glossa* Glossa : a journal of general linguistics. eISSN: 2397-1835.

*IJSL* International journal of the sociology of language. Berlin. ISSN: 0165-2516. eISSN: 1613-3668.

*IN* Internationale Neerlandistiek. Amsterdam. ISSN: 1876-9071. eISSN: 2214-5729.

*Interspeech* Interspeech. S. l. ISSN: 1990-9772.

*IPRG* Intercultural pragmatics. Berlin. ISSN: 1612-295X. eISSN: 1613-365X.

*JASA* The journal of the Acoustical Society of America. Melville, NY.

*JChL* Journal of child language. Cambridge. ISSN: 0305-0009. eISSN: 1469-7602.

*JGL-SGL* Journal of Germanic linguistics. Cambridge. ISSN: 1470-5427. eISSN: 1475-3014.

*JPCL* Journal of pidgin and creole languages. Amsterdam. ISSN: 0920-9034. eISSN: 1569-9870.

*Language* Language : journal of the Linguistic Society of America. Baltimore, MD. ISSN: 0097-8507. eISSN: 1535-0665.

*Lexikos* Lexikos. Stellenbosch. ISSN: 1684-4904. eISSN: 2224-0039.

*LgDC* Language dynamics and change. Leiden. ISSN: 2210-5824. eISSN: 2210-5832.

*LIN* Linguistics in the Netherlands : AVT publications. Amsterdam. ISSN: 0929-7332. eISSN: 1569-9919.

## PERIODICALS

<i>Linguistics</i>	Linguistics : an interdisciplinary journal of the language sciences. Berlin. ISSN: 0024-3949. eISSN: 1613-396X.
<i>LiS</i>	Language in society. Cambridge. ISSN: 0047-4045.
<i>Literator</i>	Literator : journal of literary criticism, comparative linguistics and literary studies = tysdkrif vir besondere en vergelykende taal- en literatuurstudie. Cape Town. ISSN: 0258-2279. eISSN: 2219-8237.
<i>LLACAN</i>	Linguistique et langues africaines revue scientifique du Llacan. Paris. ISSN: 2429-2230.
<i>LM</i>	Language matters : studies in the languages of Africa. London. ISSN: 1022-8195. eISSN: 1753-5395.
<i>LPLP</i>	Language problems and language planning. Amsterdam. ISSN: 0272-2690. eISSN: 1569-9889.
<i>LRE</i>	Language resources and evaluation. Dordrecht. ISSN: 1574-020X. eISSN: 1574-0218.
<i>Multiling</i>	Multilingual margins : a journal of multilingualism from the periphery. S. l. eISSN: 2221-4216.
<i>NAfr</i>	Nomina africana : journal of the Names Society of Southern Africa = Tydskrif van die Naamkundevereniging van Suider-Afrika. Durban. ISSN: 1012-0254. eISSN: 2070-2639.
<i>NeerlW</i>	NeerlandicaWratislaviensia. Wroclaw. ISSN: 0860-0716.
<i>NJAS</i>	Nordic journal of African studies. Helsinki. ISSN: 1235-4481. eISSN: 1459-9465.
<i>PerLinguam</i>	Per linguam : a journal for language learning = tydskrif vir taalaanleer. Stellenbosch. ISSN: 0259-2312. eISSN: 2224-0012.
<i>SAfrJAL</i>	South African journal of African languages = Suid-Afrikaanse tijdskrif vir Afrikatale. Pretoria. ISSN: 0257-2117. eISSN: 2305-1159.
<i>SALALS</i>	Southern African linguistics and applied language studies. Grahamstown. ISSN: 1607-3614. eISSN: 1727-9461.
<i>SPIL</i>	Stellenbosch papers in linguistics. Stellenbosch. ISSN: 1027-3417. eISSN: 2223-9936.
<i>SPILPLUS</i>	Stellenbosch papers in linguistics PLUS. Stellenbosch. ISSN: 1726-541X. eISSN: 2224-3380.
<i>TNA</i>	Tydskrif vir Nederlands en Afrikaans. Pretoria. ISSN: 1022-6966.
<i>TsGw</i>	Tydskrif vir geesteswetenskappe. Pretoria. ISSN: 0041-4751. eISSN: 2224-7912.

## ABBREVIATIONS

The following is a list of abbreviations used in the *Bibliography of South African Languages*. Please note that wherever these abbreviations appear in the titles of publications, they were used so by the authors.

ab.	abstract	Fr.	French
Acad.	Academy	G.	German
Afr.	African	Hrsg.	Herausgeber, herausgegeben
art.	article	inst.	institute
ass.	association	introd.	introduction, introductory
biblio.	bibliography	LB	Linguistic Bibliography
cf.	confer (compare, "see")	lg.	language
ch.	chapter	ling.	linguistic, linguistics
Chin.	Chinese	n.s.	new series, nouvelle série
comm.	commentary	p.	page(s)
conf.	conference	Pol.	Polish
cont.	continuation, continued	publ.	publication(s), published
contr.	contribution(s)	rev.	review
coord.	coordinator, coordinated	s.l.	sine loco (no place)
dir.	direction, directeur, directrice	s.n.	sine nomine (no publisher)
disc.	discussion	Sp.	Spanish
diss.	dissertation	summ.	summary
Du.	Dutch	suppl.	supplement
E.	English	transl.	translation, translated,
ed.	edited, editor, edition	univ.	translator
fac.	faculty		university

## BECOME A CONTRIBUTOR TO THE *LINGUISTIC BIBLIOGRAPHY*

The editorial team is looking for specialists who would like to contribute to the *Linguistic Bibliography* by gathering and compiling bibliographical references in their field of expertise.

The *Linguistic Bibliography*, published in annual print volumes and online, is a collection of detailed bibliographical descriptions of linguistic publications on general and language-specific theoretical linguistics. While the bibliography aims to cover all languages of the world, particular attention is given to the inclusion of publications on endangered and lesser-studied languages. Publications in any language are collected, analyzed and annotated (using a state-of-the-art system of subject and language keywords) by an international team of linguists and contributors from all over the world.

If you are interested in joining the *Linguistic Bibliography*, please contact the editors via [lb@brill.com](mailto:lb@brill.com).

For more information, visit [brill.com/lbcontributor](http://brill.com/lbcontributor) or scan the QR-code below.



## General works

### 3. Conferences, workshops, meetings

- 1 *Afrolusitanistik – eine vergessene Disziplin in Deutschland? : Dokumentation des 2. Bremer Afro-Romania Kolloquiums vom 27.-29.Juni 1996* / Ruth Degenhardt ; Thomas Stoltz ; Hella Ulferts. – Bremen : Univ. Bremen, 1996. – 399 p. – (Bremer Beiträge zur Afro-Romania ; 2).
- 2 *Akten des XII. Internationalen Germanistenkongresses, Warschau 2010 : Vielheit und Einheit der Germanistik weltweit : deutsche Morphologie im Kontrast-Beschreibende deutsche Grammatik- Synthetische Grammatik des Deutschen als einzelsprachliche Grammatik auf universeller Basis- Corpusdaten und grammatische Regeln- Sprachkonzepte und Grammatikmodelle im DaFiA-* / Hrsg. von Franciszek Grucza ; Mitherausgeber: Peter Colliander, Józef Dariski, Kennosuke Ezawa, Stefan J. Schierholz, Horst J. Simon. – Frankfurt am Main : Peter Lang, 2012. – 389 p. – (Publikationen der Internationalen Vereinigung für Germanistik ; 15) | [Proceedings of the 12th International Germanists' Congress, Warsaw 2010 : the diversity and unity of German philology worldwide : German morphology in contrast – descriptive German grammar – synthetic grammar of German as individual grammar on a universal basis – corpus data and grammar rules – language concepts and grammar models in German as a foreign language abroad] | G. ab.
- 3 *The Arabic script in Africa : studies in the use of a writing system* / Ed. by Meikal Mumin ; Kees Versteegh. – Leiden : Brill, 2014. – xix, 400 p. – (Studies in Semitic languages and linguistics ; 71) | Papers based on presentations at the TASIA (The Arabic script in Africa: diffusion, usage, diversity and dynamics of a writing system) workshop, held on April 6-7, 2010, at the Univ. of Cologne, Germany.
- 4 *Binamn : uppkomst, bildning, terminologi och bruk : handlingar från NORNA:s 40:e symposium i Älvkarleö, Uppland, 29/9-1/10 2010* / Redigerade av Staffan Nyström (huvudredaktör) ; Eva Brylla ; Katharina Leibring ; Lennart Ryman & Per Vikstrand. – Uppsala : NORNA-Förlaget, 2012. – 192 p. – (NORNA-rapporter ; 88) | With summaries in English.

- 5 *Complex processes in new languages* / Ed. by Enoch Oladé Aboh ; Norval Smith. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2009. – vii, 409 p. – (Creole language library ; 35) | Selected papers from the Sixth Creolistics Workshop held in Giessen, 2006.
- 6 *Consonant clusters and structural complexity* / Ed. by Philip Hoole ; Lasse Bombien ; Marianne Pouplier ; Christine Mooshammer ; Barbara Kühnert. – Berlin : De Gruyter Mouton, 2012. – vi, 409 p. – (Interface explorations ; 26) | Selected papers from a meeting in Munich in the summer of 2008.
- 7 *Continuity and change in grammar* / Ed. by Anne Breitbarth ; Christopher Lucas ; Sheila Watts ; David Willis. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2010. – viii, 359 p. – (Linguistik aktuell = Linguistics today ; 159) | Selected papers from the Continuity and change in grammar conference, Univ. of Cambridge, 18-20 March 2008.
- 8 *Cyclical change* / Ed. by Elly van Gelderen. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2009. – viii, 329 p. – (Linguistik aktuell = Linguistics today ; 146) | Papers presented during the Workshop on the Linguistic Cycle at Arizona State University in April 2008.
- 9 *Diversity in African languages : selected papers from the 46th annual conference on African Linguistics* / Ed. by Doris L. Payne ; Sara Pacchiarotti ; Mokaya Bosire. – Berlin : Language science press, 2016. – vii, 589 p. – (Contemporary African linguistics ; 1) | Papers from the 46th Annual Conference on African Linguistics, University of Oregon, March 26-28, 2015.
- 10 *Electronic lexicography in the 21st century : new applications for new users : proceedings of eLex 2011* / Ed. by Iztok Kosem and Karmen Kosem. – Ljubljana : Trojina, zavod za uporabno slovenistiko = institute for applied Slovene studies, 2011. – ix, 310 p | Proceedings of eLex, Bled, 10-12 November 2011 | Electronic publ.
- 11 *Exploring linguistic standards in non-dominant varieties of pluricentric languages. Explorando estándares lingüísticos en variedades no dominantes de lenguas pluricéntricas* / Rudolf Muhr ; Carla Amorós Negre ; Carmen Fernández Juncal ; Klaus Zimmermann ; Emilio Prieto ; Natividad Hernández (eds.). – Frankfurt am Main : Lang, 2013. – 484 p. – (Österreichisches Deutsch. Sprache der Gegenwart ; 15) | E. & Sp. papers presented at the “2nd International conference on non-dominant varieties of pluricentric languages”, held in Salamanca (Spain), 11-13 July, 2012.
- 12 *FEL XX Language Colonization and Endangerment : long-term effects, echoes and reactions : proceedings of the 20th FEL Conference* / Editors:

Nicholas Ostler and Panchanan Mohanty. – Hungerford : Foundation for Endangered Languages, 2016. – xiv, 200 p | Conference held at Hyderabad, Centre for Endangered Languages and Mother Tongue Studies, 9 – 12 December 2016.

13 *Geographical typology and linguistic areas : with special reference to Africa* / Ed. by Osamu Hieda ; Christa König ; Hiroshi Nakagawa. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2011. – vi, 321 p. – (Tokyo University of Foreign Studies. Studies in linguistics ; 2).

14 *Historical linguistics 2009 : selected papers from the 19th international conference on historical linguistics, Nijmegen, 10-14 August 2009* / Ed. by Ans van Kemenade ; Nynke de Haas. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2012. – xxi, 404 p. – (Current issues in linguistic theory ; 320).

15 *Językoznanstwo historyczne i typologiczne : w 100-lecie urodzin Profesora Tadeusza Milewskiego* / Komitet red. Leszek Bednarczuk ; Wojciech Smoczyński ; Maria Wojtyła-Świerzowska. – Kraków : Polska Akad. Umiejętności, 2008. – 708 p. – (Rozprawy Wydziału Filologicznego ; 76) | Contributions to a conference 'Historical and typological linguistics' held in Cracow, 12-13 Dec. 2006, on the occasion of the 100th birthday of Tadeusz Milewski (1906-1966).

16 *Khoisan languages and linguistics : proceedings of the 5th International Symposium, July 13-17, 2014, Riezlern/Kleinwalsertal* / Sheena Shah ; Mattias Brenzinger (eds.). – Köln : Köppe, 2016. – 362 p. – (Quellen zur Khoisan-Forschung = Research in Khoisan studies ; 34).

17 *Linguistic complexity : second language acquisition, indigenization, contact* / Ed. by Bernd Kortmann ; Benedikt Szemrecsanyi. – Berlin, Boston : De Gruyter, 2012. – vi, 264 p. – (Linguae & litterae ; 13) | Papers from a workshop held at the Freiburg Institute for Advanced Studies (FRIAS) in May 2009.

18 *Monosyllables : from phonology to typology* / Thomas Stolz ; Nicole Nau ; Cornelia Stroh (eds.). – Berlin : Akademie Verlag, 2012. – 248 p. – (Studia typologica. Beihefte zu Sprachtypologie und Universalienforschung ; 12) | Papers from an international conference held in Bremen, 28-30 October, 2009, as part of the *Festival of languages*.

19 *Multilingual individuals and multilingual societies* / Ed. by Kurt Braunmüller and Christoph Gabriel. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2012. – xiii, 474 p. – (Hamburg studies on multilingualism ; 13) | Selected papers from an international conference held in Hamburg (October 2010).

20 *Philologia Frisica anno 2008 : lêzingen fan it achttjinde Frysk Filologekongres fan de Fryske Akademy op 10, 11 en 12 desimber 2008* / Kongreskommisje/redaksje: P. Boersma ; G. Th. Jensma ; R. Salverda. –

Ljouwert = Leeuwarden : Fryske Akademy, 2012. – 298 p | Frisian, G., Du. & E. text.

21 *Proceedings of the 10th LASU Conference, Roma, Lesotho, 25-27 November 2009 : language contact, identity and socio-economic mobility* / edited by Alison Love, 'Mulillo Machobane, Francina Moloi, Thekiso Khati, Beatrice Ekanjume & Taclo Qhala. – [Maseru] : National University of Lesotho, 2011. – viii, 441 p.

22 *Proceedings of the 29th West Coast Conference on Formal Linguistics* / ed. by Jaehoon Choi, E. Alan Hogue, Jeffrey Punske, Deniz Tat, Jessamyn Schertz, and Alex Trueman. – Somerville, MA : Cascadilla, 2012. – viii, 406 p. – (West Coast Conference on Formal Linguistics ; 29) | Conference took place April 22-24, 2011 at University of Arizona.

23 *Proceedings of the 33rd West Coast Conference on Formal Linguistics* / ed. by Kyeong-min Kim, Pocholo Umbal, Trevor Block, Queenie Chan, Tanie Cheng, Kelli Finney, Mara Katz, Sophie Nickel-Thompson, and Lisa Shorten. – Somerville, MA : Cascadilla, 2016. – viii, 426 p. – (West Coast Conference on Formal Linguistics ; 33) | Conference took place March 27-29, 2015 at Simon Fraser University.

24 *Proceedings of the thirty-fourth annual meeting of the Berkeley Linguistics Society, February 8-10, 2008 : general session and parasession on information structure*. – BLS / Ed. by Sarah Berson, Alex Bratkievich, Daniel Bruhn, Amy Campbell, Ramon Escamilla, Allegra Giovine, Lindsey Newbold, Marilola Perez, Marta Piquerias-Brunet, Russell Rhomieux. – Berkeley, CA : Berkeley Linguistics Society, 2012. – iii, 482 p. – (BLS ; 34).

25 *Proceedings of the 34th West Coast Conference on Formal Linguistics* / ed. by Aaron Kaplan, Abby Kaplan, Miranda K. McCarvel, and Edward J. Rubin. – Somerville, MA : Cascadilla, 2017. – vii, 598 p. – (West Coast Conference on Formal Linguistics ; 34) | Conference took place April 29-May 1, 2016 at the University of Utah.

26 *Proceedings of the thirty-seventh annual meeting of the Berkeley Linguistics Society, February 12-13, 2011 : general session and parasession on language, gender, and sexuality*. – BLS / Edited by Chundra Cathcart ; I-Hsuan Chen ; Greg Finley ; Shinae Kang ; Clare S. Sandy ; Elise Stickles. – Berkeley, CA : Berkeley Linguistics Society, 2013. – vi, 478 p. – (BLS ; 37).

27 *Proceedings of the First Workshop on Computational Approaches to Compound Analysis : held at the 25th International Conference on Computational Linguistics (COLING 2014)* / Editors: Ben Verhoeven ; Walter

Daelemans ; Menno van Zaanen ; Gerhard van Huyssteen. – Dublin : Dublin City University ; Stroudsburg, PA : Ass. for Computational Linguistics, 2014. – vii, 91 p.

28 *Proceedings of the 6th World Congress of African Linguistics, Cologne, 17-21 August 2009* / Ed. by Matthias Brenzinger ; Anne-Maria Fehn. – Köln : Köppe, 2012. – xiv, 658 p.

29 *Prosodic categories : production, perception and comprehension* / Ed. by Sónia Frota ; Gorka Elordieta ; Pilar Prieto. – Dordrecht : Springer, 2011. – viii, 296 p. – (Studies in natural language and linguistic theory ; 82) | Papers from the Third Tone and Intonation in Europe Conference (TIE3), held in Lisbon, September 2008.

30 *Selected proceedings of the 40th annual conference on African linguistics : African languages and linguistics today* / Ed. by Eyamba G. Bokamba ; Ryan K. Shosted ; Bezza Tesfaw Ayalew. – Somerville, MA : Cascadilla Proceedings Project, 2011. – viii, 230 p. | Conference held at the Univ. of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, April 9-11, 2009.

31 *Selected proceedings of the 43rd annual conference on African linguistics : linguistic interfaces in African languages* / Ed. by Olaniké Ola Orie ; Karen W. Sanders. – Somerville, MA : Cascadilla Proceedings Project, 2013. – vi, 277 p. | Papers from a conference held at Tulane Univ., 15-17 March, 2012 | Also freely available online.

32 *Selected proceedings of the 42nd Annual conference of African linguistics : African languages in context* / Ed. by Michael R. Marlo ; Nikki B. Adams ; Christopher R. Green ; Michelle Morrison ; Tristan M. Purvis. – Somerville, MA : Cascadilla Proceedings Project, 2012. – xi, 337 p. | Free web access to articles.

33 *Standaardtalen in beweging* / Red.: Marijke J. van der Wal ; Eep Francken. – Münster : Nodus, 2010. – 217 p. | Papers from the symposium 'Standaardtalen in beweging : standaardisatie en destandaardisatie in Nederland, Vlaanderen en Zuid-Afrika', held at the Univ. of Leiden, 19-21 August 2009.

34 *Theoretical approaches to disharmonic word order* / Ed. by Theresa Biberauer ; Michelle L. Sheehan. – Oxford : Oxford UP, 2013. – xvi, 532 p. – (Oxford linguistics) | All papers but one originated from a conference held in Newcastle, 2009.

35 *Viva Africa 2008 : proceedings of the IIIrd international conference on African studies* / Ed. by Tomáš Machálík ; Jan Záhořík. – Plzeň : Západočeská univ., 2008. – 351 p.

36 *World Englishes : problems, properties and prospects : selected papers from the 13th IAWE conference* / Ed. by Thomas Hoffmann ; Lucia

Siebers. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2009. – xix, 436 p. – (Varieties of English around the world ; G40) | Selected papers from the 13th IAWE conference held at Regensburg University, October 2007.

#### 4. Festschriften and miscellanies

##### 4.1. Festschriften

37 *Gradual creolization : studies celebrating Jacques Arends* / Ed. by Rachel Selbach ; Hugo Cardoso ; Margot van den Berg. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2009. – x, 392 p. – (Creole language library ; 34).

38 *Lexicography in the 21st century : in honour of Henning Bergenholz* / Ed. by Sandro Nielsen and Sven Tarp. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2009. – xi, 341 p. – (Terminology and lexicography research and practice ; 12).

39 *The view from Building 20 : essays in linguistics in honor of Sylvain Bromberger* / Ed. by Kenneth Hale ; Samuel Jay Keyser. – Cambridge, MA : MIT Press, 1993. – xi, 273 p. – (Current studies in linguistics series ; 24).

40 *African languages and linguistic theory : a festschrift in honour of Professor Herbert Chimhundu* / Edited by Langa Khumalo. – Cape Town : CASAS, 2014. – xiii, 297 p. – (CASAS book series ; 109).

41 *Die tand van die tyd : opstelle opgedra aan Jac Conradie* / Redakteurs: Willie Burger en Marné Pienaar. – Stellenbosch : Sun Press, 2009. – iii, 227 p. | [Die tand van die tyd : essays dedicated to Jac Conradie].

42 *Voor Magda : artikelen voor Magda Devos bij haar afscheid van de Universiteit Gent* / Johan De Caluwe & Jacques Van Keymeulen [red.]. – Gent : Vakgroep Nederlandse Taalkunde, Univ. Gent ; Gent : Academia Press, 2010. – 816 p.

43 *Festschrift Rufus H. Gouws* / Redakteurs/Editors/Éditeurs: Willem Botha ; Paul Mavoungou ; Dion Nkomo. – Stellenbosch : Sun Press, 2013. – xiv, 299 p. | Afrikaans, E. & Fr. articles.

44 *Between west and east : Festschrift for Wim Honselaar on the occasion of his 65th birthday* / Ed. by René Genis ; Eric de Haard ; Janneke Kalsbeek ; Evelien Keizer ; Jenny Stelleman. – Amsterdam : Pegasus, 2012. – xvi, 740 p. – (Pegasus Oost-Europese Studies ; 20).

45 *Structure preserved : studies in syntax for Jan Koster* / Ed. by C. Jan-Wouter Zwart ; Mark de Vries. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2010. – xxiii, 395 p. – (Linguistik aktuell = Linguistics today ; 164).

46 *Bantu languages and linguistics : papers in memory of Dr. Rugatiri D. K. Mekacha [1956-2007]* / Karsten Legère (ed.). – Eckersdorf : Breitinger, 2013. – ii, 314 p. – (Bayreuth African studies ; 91).

47 *In and out of Africa : languages in question in honour of Robert Nicolaï*. Vol. 1. *Language contact and epistemological issues* / Ed. by Carole de Féral. – Leuven : Peeters, 2013. – 236 p. – (Bibliothèque des cahiers de l'Institut de Linguistique de Louvain ; 130) | E. & Fr. text | Cf. 48.

48 *In and out of Africa : languages in question : in honour of Robert Nicolaï*. Vol. 2. *Language contact and language change in Africa* / Ed. by Carole de Féral ; Maarten Kossmann ; Mauro Tosco. – Louvain-la-Neuve : Peeters, 2014. – 329 p. – (Bibliothèque des cahiers de l'Institut de Linguistique de Louvain ; 132) | E. & Fr. text | Cf. 47.

49 *Social lives in language : sociolinguistics and multilingual speech communities : celebrating the work of Gillian Sankoff* / Ed. by Miriam Meyerhoff ; Naomi Nagy. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2008. – ix, 365 p. – (Impact. Studies in language and society ; 24).

50 *Language contact in Africa and the African diaspora in the Americas : in honor of John V. Singler* / Edited by Cecelia Cutler ; Zvjezdana Vrzić ; Philipp Angermeyer. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2017. – vii, 369 p. – (Creole language library ; 53).

51 *Lone Tree : scholarship in the service of the Koon : essays in memory of Anthony T Traill* / edited by Rainer Vossen & Wilfried H G Haacke. – Köln : Köppe, 2016. – 458 p.

## General linguistics and related disciplines

### 0.2. History of linguistics, biographical data, organizations

#### 0.2.1. Western traditions

##### 0.2.1.6. Nineteenth century

52 *Kolonialzeitliche Sprachforschung : die Beschreibung afrikanischer und ozeanischer Sprachen zur Zeit der deutschen Kolonialherrschaft* / Thomas Stolz ; Christina Vossmann ; Barbara Dewein (Hrsg.). – Berlin : Akademie Verlag, 2011. – 312 p. – (Koloniale und postkoloniale Linguistik = Colonial and postcolonial linguistics ; 1).

53 Oosthuysen, J. C. (Koos): Extricating the description of the grammar of isiXhosa from a Eurocentric approach. – *SAfrJAL* 35/1, 2015, 83-92.

54 Rensburg, Christo van: Oor die eerste 50 jaar se maak aan Standaardafrikaans = Creating a standardised version of Afrikaans : the first 50 years. – *TsGw* 55/3, 2015, 319-342 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

55 Russow, Gerald: "... die Ursache der grammatischen Zersetzung des Kapholländischen..." : der Briefwechsel zwischen Hugo Schuchardt und Nicolaas Mansveld. – *GLS* 78, 2012, 75-99 | Hugo Schuchardt (1842-1927) | Nicolaas Mansveld (1852-1933).

56 Swart, Corlietha: Landmeter Von Wielligh op ongekarteerde taallandskap. – *TNA* 16/2, 2009, 92-104 | [Surveyor Von Wielligh in the uncharted linguistic landscape] | E. ab.

##### 0.2.1.7. Twentieth century

57 Mafela, Munzhedzi James: L.T. Marole : a forgotten pioneer in Tshivenda lexicography. – *Lexikos* 18, 2008, 366-373 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

58 Zonneveld, Wim: Fonologie en het Afrikaans – van regels via parameters naar constraints. – *TsGw* 51/4, 2011, 730-745 | Phonology and Afrikaans – from rules to parameters to constraints.

### 0.2.1.8. Twenty-first century

59 [Jonge, Robert de] Jonge, Bob de: Robert Kirsner, Columbia School linguistics and cognitive grammar : a functionalist struggle. – *NTaalk* 20/2, 2015, 224-227 | Disc. of 299.

### 0.2.3. Biographical data

60 Roberge, Paul T.: Afrikaans : "Might it be a little more 'South Africa'?" . – (509), 389-398 | On Hans den Besten's work on Afrikaans.

61 Deumert, Ana: Giving voice : the archive in Afrikaans historical linguistics. – (509), 377-388 | On Hans den Besten's work on Afrikaans.

62 Holm, John A.: Partial restructuring : Dutch on the Cape and Portuguese in Brazil. – (509), 399-418 | On Hans den Besten's work on Afrikaans.

### 0.3. Linguistic theory and methodology

63 *Bi-directionality in the cognitive sciences : avenues, challenges, and limitations* / Ed. by Marcus Callies ; Wolfgang Keller ; Astrid Lohöfer. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2011. – viii, 313 p. – (Human cognitive processing. Cognitive foundations of language structure and use ; 30).

64 *Linguistic theory and empirical evidence* / Ed. by Bob de Jonge ; Yishai Tobin. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2011. – vi, 299 p. – (Studies in functional and structural linguistics ; 64).

65 Pullum, Geoffrey K.: Nostalgic views from Building 20. – *JL* 32/1, 1996, 137-147 | Rev. art. on 39.

66 Rooy, Bertus van; Kruger, Haidee: The case for an emergentist approach. – *SPILPLUS* 48, 2015, 41-67 | E. ab.

### 0.6. Applied linguistics

67 Carstens, Adelia: Investigating literacy narratives among ethno-linguistically diverse South African students. – *IJSL* 234, 2015, 93-114.

#### 1. Phonetics and phonology

68 *Above and beyond the segments : experimental linguistics and phonetics* / Ed. by Johanneke Caspers ; Yiya Chen ; Willemijn Heeren ; Jos Pacilly ; Niels O. Schiller and Ellen van Zanten. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2014. – xii, 363 p | Papers presented to Vincent van Heuven, on the occasion of his retirement in 2014.

69 *Challenging sonority : cross-linguistic evidence /* edited by Martin J. Ball and Nicole Müller. – London : Equinox, 2016. – vi, 455 p. – (Studies in phonetics and phonology).

## 1.1. Phonetics

### 1.1.1. Articulatory phonetics

70 Bateman, Nicoleta: Palatalization as overlap of articulatory gestures : crosslinguistic evidence. – (24), 25-36.

### 1.1.3. Auditory phonetics

71 Best, Catherine T.; Hallé, Pierre A.: Perception of initial obstruent voicing is influenced by gestural organization. – *JPhon* 38/1, 2010, 109-126 | On the perception of Zulu, Tlingit and Hebrew obstruent voicing by English and French listeners.

## 1.2. Phonology

72 *Phonological explorations : empirical, theoretical and diachronic issues /* Bert Botma ; Roland Noske (eds.). – Berlin : De Gruyter Mouton, 2012. – x, 355 p. – (Linguistische Arbeiten ; 548).

### 1.2.1. Suprasegmental phonology (prosody)

73 Kenstowicz, Michael J.: Evidence for metrical constituency. – (39), 257-273.

## 2. Grammar, morphosyntax

74 *On looking into words (and beyond) : structures, relations, analyses /* Ed. by Claire Bowern ; Laurence Horn ; Raffaella Zanuttini. – Berlin : Language science press, 2017. – xi, 609 p. – (Empirically oriented theoretical morphology and syntax ; 3) | A tribute to Stephen R. Anderson.

75 *Word classes : nature, typology and representations /* Ed. by Raffaele Simone ; Francesca Masini. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2014. – vii, 293 p. – (Current issues in linguistic theory ; 332).

## 2.2. Syntax

76 *Approaches to complex predicates* / Ed. by Léa Nash ; Pollet Samvelian. – Leiden : Brill, 2016 [2015]. – 295 p. – (Syntax & semantics ; 41).

77 *Cleft structures* / Ed. by Katharina Hartmann ; Tonje Veenstra. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2013. – viii, 348 p. – (Linguistik aktuell = Linguistics today ; 208).

78 Halpert, Claire: Raising parameters. – (23), 186-195 | E. ab.

79 *Microvariation in syntactic doubling* / Ed. by Sjef Barbiers ; Olaf Koeneman ; Marika Lekakou ; Margreet van der Ham. – Bingley : Emerald, 2008. – xiv, 479 p. – (Syntax & semantics ; 36).

80 Okabe, Reiko: [Rev. art. of] Pylkkänen, L. (2008) *Introducing arguments*. – *EngL* 27/1, 2010, 172-184 | Cf. 81.

81 Pylkkänen, Liina: *Introducing arguments*. – Cambridge, MA : MIT, 2008. – xvi, 156 p. – (Linguistic inquiry monographs ; 49).

## 3. Lexicon (lexicology and lexicography)

### 3.2. Lexicography

82 *Dictionaries : an international encyclopedia of lexicography : supplementary volume: recent developments with focus on electronic and computational lexicography* / Ed. by Rufus H. Gouws ; Ulrich Heid ; Wolfgang Schweickard ; Herbert Ernst Wiegand. – Berlin : De Gruyter Mouton, 2013. – xiii, 1579 p. – (Handbücher zur Sprach- und Kommunikationswissenschaft = Handbooks of linguistics and communication science ; 5/4).

83 Prinsloo, D.J.: The role of corpora in future dictionaries. – (38), 181-206.

#### 3.2.2. Plurilingual lexicography

84 Beyer, Herman L.: Voorbeeld en ooradressering in tweetalige woordenboek. – *Lexikos* 21, 2011, 78-94 | E. ab: Examples and overaddressing in bilingual dictionaries | E. & Afrikaans ab.

85 Prinsloo, D.J.: A critical analysis of multilingual dictionaries. – *Lexikos* 26, 2016, 220-240 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

**3.5. Phraseology, paroemiology**

86 *Linguo-cultural research on phraseology* / Ed.: Joanna Szerszunowicz ; Bogusław Nowowiejski & Priscilla Ishida ; Katsumasa Yagi. – Białystok : Univ. of Białystok, 2015. – 599 p. – (Intercontinental dialogue on phraseology ; 3) | E. & Pol. ab | Preface, 9-12 by Joanna Szerszunowicz.

**4. Semantics and pragmatics**

87 *Metaphors for learning : cross-cultural perspectives* / Ed. by Erich A. Berendt. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2008. – ix, 249 p. – (Human cognitive processing. Cognitive foundations of language structure and use ; 22).

**4.2. Pragmatics, discourse analysis and text grammar**

88 *Choice in language : applications in text analysis* / Ed. by Gerard O'Grady ; Tom Bartlett and Lise Fontaine. – Sheffield : Equinox, 2014. – 346 p.

89 *Contrasts and positions in information structure* / Ed. by Ivona Kučerová ; Ad Neeleman. – Cambridge : Cambridge UP, 2012. – vii, 346 p.

**9. Psycholinguistics, language acquisition and neurolinguistics****9.3. Language acquisition****9.3.1. First language acquisition, child language****9.3.1.1. First language acquisition by pre-school children**

90 *Pronouns and clitics in early language* / Ed. by María Pilar Larrañaga ; Pedro Guijarro-Fuentes. – Berlin : De Gruyter Mouton, 2012. – vi, 307 p. – (Studies in generative grammar ; 108).

## 9.4. Neurolinguistics and language disorders

### 9.4.2. Language disorders

#### 9.4.2.1. Disorders of language development

91 Southwood, Frenette; Oosthuizen, Johan: On accounting for problems demonstrated by children with SLI in the interpretation and production of passive construction. – *SPILPLUS* 36, 2008, 105-117.

## 10. Sociolinguistics and dialectology

### 10.1. Sociolinguistics

92 Boakye, Naomi: The social dimension of reading literacy development in South Africa : bridging inequalities among the various language groups. – *IJSL* 23/4, 2015, 133-156.

93 Dekoke, Taty: Congolese migrants and South African language appropriation. – *LM* 47/1, 2016, 84-104 | E. ab.

94 Evans, Richard: South Africa's changing linguistic frontiers : Latin mottoes in schools and universities. – *LM* 46/1, 2015, 139-156 | E. ab.

95 *Intercultural contact, language learning and migration* / Ed. by Barbara Geraghty and Jean E. Conacher. – London : Bloomsbury, 2014. – xv, 234 p. – (Advances in sociolinguistics).

96 Kaschula, Russell H.; Mostert, André; Ralarala, Monwabisi Knowledge: Communicating across cultures in South African law courts : towards an information technology solution. – *SPILPLUS* 36, 2008, 89-104.

97 Makoe, Pinky; McKinney, Carolyn: Linguistic ideologies in multilingual South African suburban schools. – *JMMD* 35/7, 2014, 658-673.

98 Mesthrie, Rajend: The risks of sociolinguistic crossing and crossovers : a retrospective from apartheid South Africa. – *SPILPLUS* 37, 2009, 89-102.

99 Mutasa, Davie E.: Language experiences of transnational migrants in the Southern African context. – *LM* 45/2, 2014, 184-203 | E. ab.

100 Nekvapil, Jiří: Sociolinguistické poznámky z Jižní Afriky. – *SaS* 73/3, 2012, 230-232 | Sociolinguistic remarks from South Africa.

101 Trimbur, John: Grassroots literacy and the written record : asbestos activism in South Africa. – *JSocL* 17/4, 2013, 460-487 | E. & Setswana ab.

102 Watermeyer, Jennifer; Penn, Claire: Communicating dosage instructions across cultural and linguistic barriers : pharmacist-patient interactions in a South African antiretroviral clinic. – *SPILPLUS* 39, 2009, 107-125.

103 Williams, Quentin Emmanuel; Stroud, Christopher: Multilingualism remixed : sampling, braggadocio and the stylisation of local voice. – *SPIL* 42, 2013, 15-36 | E. ab.

104 *Youth language practices in Africa and beyond* / Ed. by Nico Nassenstein ; Andrea Hollington. – Berlin : De Gruyter Mouton, 2015. – xi, 366 p. – (Contributions to the sociology of language ; 105).

#### 10.1.1. Language attitudes and social identity

105 *Bi/multilingual identity in South Africa*. – *IJBEB* – Clevedon : Multilingual Matters, 2014. – 635-771 – (IJBEB ; 17/6).

106 *The language of social media : identity and community on the internet* / Ed. by Philip Sargeant and Caroline Tagg. – Hounds mills : Palgrave Macmillan, 2014. – xii, 260 p.

107 Ngwenya, Themba Lancelot: Social identity and linguistic creativity : manifestations of the use of multilingualism in South African advertising. – *SALALS* 29/1, 2011, 1-16.

#### 10.1.2. Language policy and language planning

108 Bagwasi, Mompoloki Mmangaka: Linguistic struggles within and beyond the Southern African Development Community. – *CILP* 13/3, 2012, 239-248.

109 Beukes, Anne-Marie: Language policy implementation in South Africa : how Kempton Park's great expectations are dashed in Tshwane. – *SPIL* 38, 2008, 1-26.

110 Cakata, Zethu; Segalo, Puleng: Obstacles to post-apartheid language policy implementation : insights from language policy experts. – *SALALS* 35/4, 2017, 321-329 | E. ab.

111 Cornelius, Eleanor: Defining 'plain language' in contemporary South Africa. – *SPIL* 44, 2015, 1-18 | E. ab.

112 Dyers, Charlyn; Abongdia, Jane-Francis: Ideology, policy and implementation : comparative perspectives from two African universities. – *SPIL* 43, 2014, 1-21 | On the University of Yaoundé in Cameroon and the University of the Western Cape in South Africa | E. ab.

113 Edwards, Viv K.; Marriote Ngwaru, Jacob: Language capital and development : the case of African language publishing for children in South Africa. – *IJSL* 22/5, 2014, 29-50.

114 Finlayson, Rosalie; Pienaar, Marné; Slabbert, Sarah: Metaphors of transformation : the new language of education in South Africa. – (87), 225-243.

115 Hill, Lloyd B.: Language and status : on the limits of language planning. – *SPIL* 39, 2010, 41-58 | E. ab.

116 *Language policy and the promotion of peace : African and European case studies* / Edited by Neville Alexander and Arnulf von Scheliha. – Pretoria : UNISA Press, 2014. – 154 p.

117 *Language policy in higher education : the case of medium-sized languages* / Edited by F. Xavier Vila and Vanessa Bretxa. – Bristol : Multilingual Matters, 2014. – 232 p.

118 Miti, Lazarus Musazitame: *Language rights in Southern Africa*. – Cape Town : CASAS, 2016. – 165 p. – (CASAS book series ; 118).

119 Mwaniki, Munene: *Language planning in South Africa : towards a language management approach*. – Saarbrücken : VDM Verlag Dr. Müller, 2011. – xi, 241 p.

120 Ndhlovu, Finex: The conundrums of language policy and politics in South Africa and Zimbabwe. – *AJL* 28/1, 2008, 59-80.

121 Ngcobo, Mtholeni N: The constitutional dynamism of a multilingual language policy : a case of South Africa. – *SAfrJAL* 32/2, 2012, 181-187.

122 Ngcobo, Mtholeni N: A strategic promotion of language use in multilingual South Africa : information and communication. – *SALALS* 27/1, 2009, 113-120.

123 Orman, Jon: Language and 'new' African migration to South Africa : an overview and some reflections on theoretical implications for policy and planning. – *LPol* 11/4, 2012, 301-322 | E. ab.

124 Plessis, Theo du: Die Pan-Suid-Afrikaanse Taalraad en die regulerig van taalsigbaarheid in Suid-Afrika - 'n ontleding van taalregteklagtes. – *SALALS* 27/2, 2009, 173-188 | E. ab.: The Pan South African Language Board and the regulation of language visibility in South Africa - an analysis of language rights complaints | E. & Afrikaans ab., E. conclusion.

125 Plessis, Theodorus du: Language conflict and change in language visibility in South Africa's Free State Province number plate case. – *LM* 44/3, 2013, 126-148 | E. ab.

126 Prah, Kwesi Kwaa: *Nithini ngolwimi iwethu? : challenges to the promotion of indigenous languages in South Africa*. – Cape Town : CASAS, 2015. – v, 42 p. – (Monograph series [CASAS] ; 262).

127 Stroud, Christopher: The Centre for Multilingualism and Diversities Research at the University of the Western Cape, South Africa. – *Multiling* 1/1, 2014, 90-97.

### 10.2. Multilingualism, language contact

128 *The handbook of bilingualism and multilingualism* / Ed. by Tej K. Bhatia ; William C. Ritchie. – Chichester : Wiley-Blackwell, 2013. – 964 p. – (Blackwell handbooks in linguistics).

129 Loth, Chrismi-Rinda; Plessis, Theodorus du: Language visibility patterns of ergonyms in the linguistic landscape of a rural municipality in the southern Free State, South Africa. – *NAfr* 31/1, 2017, 11-27 | E. ab.

#### 10.2.1. Multilingualism

130 Hibbert, Liesel: *The linguistic landscape of post-apartheid South Africa : politics and discourse*. – Bristol : Multilingual Matters, 2016. – 184 p | E. ab.

131 Makalela, Leketi: Introduction. – *IJSL* 234, 2015, 1-5 | Introd. to the special issue “(New) social dynamics of multilingual practices in the post-independent South Africa : between marginalization and harmonization”

132 *Multilingualism at work : from policies to practices in public, medical and business settings* / Ed. by Bernd Meyer ; Birgit Apfelbaum. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2010. – vi, 274 p. – (Hamburg studies on multilingualism ; 9).

133 Muyken, Pieter: Bridges over troubled waters : theoretical linguistics and multilingualism research. – *SPIL* 40, 2011, 20-38 | E. ab.

134 *(New) social dynamics of multilingual practices in the post-independent South Africa : between marginalization and harmonization* / Ed. by Leketi Makalela. – Berlin, Boston : De Gruyter, 2015 – 188 p. – (IJS ; 234) | Special issue.

135 Oostendorp, Marcellyn; Bylund, Emanuel: Emotions and HIV/AIDS in South Africa : a multilingual perspective. – *SPILPLUS* 41, 2012, 77-89 | E. ab.

136 Williams, Quentin Emmanuel; Stroud, Christopher: Multilingualism in transformative spaces : contact and conviviality. – *LPol* 12/4, 2013, 289-311.

### 10.2.3. Language contact

137 *The Cambridge handbook of areal linguistics* / Edited by Raymond Hickey. – Cambridge : Cambridge UP, 2017. – xxvi, 1005 p. – (Cambridge handbooks in language and linguistics).

138 *Handbook of language contact* / Ed. by Raymond Hickey. – Chichester : Wiley-Blackwell, 2010. – xvii, 863 p. – (Blackwell handbooks in linguistics).

139 *Languages in contact 2011. – PhWAS* / Ed. by Zdzisław Wąsik ; Piotr P. Chruszczewski. – Wrocław : Wyd. Wyższej Szkoły Filologicznej we Wrocławiu, 2012. – 246 p. – (PhWAS ; 9).

140 Makalela, Leketi: Translanguaging practices in complex multilingual spaces : a discontinuous continuity in post-independent South Africa. – *IJSL* 234, 2015, 115-132.

141 Mesthrie, Rajend: South Africa and areal linguistics. – (137), 527-550.

## 11. Comparative linguistics

142 Zulu, P. N.; Botha, G.; Barnard, E.: Orthographic measures of language distances between the official South African languages. – *Literator* 29/1, 2008, 185-204 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

### 11.1. Historical linguistics and language change

143 *Parameter theory and linguistic change* / Ed. by Charlotte Galves ; Sonia Cyrino ; Ruth Lopes ; Filomena Sandalo ; Juanito Avelar. – Oxford : Oxford UP, 2012. – xviii, 386 p. – (Oxford studies in diachronic and historical linguistics (OSDHL) ; 2).

## 13. Onomastics

### 13.2. Toponymy

144 Jenkins, Elwyn R.: Hybrid geographical names in South Africa. – *NAfr* 31/2, 2017, 153-160 | E. ab.

### 13.3. Name studies other than anthroponomy and toponomy

145 [Neethling, Siebert J] Neethling, Bertie: Naming as a manifestation of Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) in post-1994 South Africa. – *Onoma* 43, 2008 [2010], 381-396 | E., Fr. & G. ab.

## Indo-European languages

### 3. Indo-Iranian

#### 3.1. Indo-Aryan (Indic)

146 *Annual review of South Asian languages and linguistics 2008* / Ed. by Rajendra Singh. – Berlin : De Gruyter Mouton, 2008. – viii, 326 p. – (Trends in linguistics. Studies and monographs ; 209).

147 Mesthrie, Rajend: South Africa. – (146), 237-241 | An annotated biblio. of South African research on South Asian lgs., including Arabic and Indian English.

#### 3.1.3. Modern Indo-Aryan

##### 3.1.3.5. Southern Indo-Aryan (Marathi)

148 Mesthrie, Rajend: Kokni in Cape Town [South Africa] and the socio-linguistics of transnationalism. – *LM* 48/3, 2017, 73-97 | E. ab.

149 Mesthrie, Rajend; Kulkarni-Joshi, Sonal; Paradkar, Ruta: Documenting 125 years of Kokni in South Africa. – (12), 140-146.

### 9. Greek

#### 9.3. Modern Greek

150 *H διαχρονική συμβολή της Ελληνικής σε άλλες γλώσσες* / Επιστημονική επιμέλεια Γεώργιος Καναράκης. – Αθήνα : Παπαζήσης, 2014. – xxvi, 746 p.

151 McDuling, Alistair; Barnes, Lawrie A.: What is the future of Greek in South Africa? Language shift and maintenance in the Greek community of Johannesburg. – *LM* 43/2, 2012, 166-183 | E. ab.

## 11. Romance

## 11.3. Gallo-Romance

## 11.3.2. French

## 11.3.2.3. Modern French

152 Ferreira-Meyers, Karen Aline Fran oise; Horne, Fiona: Multilingualism and the language curriculum in South Africa : contextualising French within the local language ecology. – *SPILPLUS* 51, 2017, 23-40 | E. ab.

## 14. Germanic

## 14.3. West Germanic

## 14.3.1. German

## 14.3.1.1. High German

## 14.3.1.1.4. New High German

153 Annas, Rolf: Fragen an die deutsche Grammatik : Schwierigkeiten von (s dafrikanischen) Studenten beim Deutschlernen. – (2), 345-350 | [Questions for German grammar : difficulties of (South African) learners of German].

154 Maltzan, Carlotta von: Sprachenpolitik und die Rolle der Fremdsprachen (Deutsch) in S dafrika. – *SPILPLUS* 38, 2009, 205-214 | [Language policy and the role of foreign languages (German) in South Africa] | E. ab.

## 14.3.2. Dutch

155 *Language and space : an international handbook of linguistic variation.* Vol. 3. *Dutch* / Ed. by Frans Hinskens ; Johan Taeldeman. – Berlin : De Gruyter Mouton, 2013. – xxi, 937 p., 39 maps – (Handb cher zur Sprach- und Kommunikationswissenschaft = Handbooks of linguistics and communication science ; 30/3).

## 14.3.2.3. Modern Dutch

156 Flecken, Monique: Dutch in progression. – *NTaalk* 20/2, 2015, 248-252 | Disc. of 299.

157 Fortuin, Egbert: Kirsner on imperatives and pragmatic particles. – *NTaalk* 20/2, 2015, 234-242 | Disc. of 299.

158 Geeraerts, Dirk: Dismiss polysemy? Ho maar!. – *NTaalk* 20/2, 2015, 218-223 | Disc. of 299.

159 Kirsner, Robert S.: Response. – *NTaalk* 20/2, 2015, 253-267 | Author's rejoinder to six articles discussing Robert S. Kirsner, *Qualitative-quantitative analyses of Dutch and Afrikaans grammar and lexicon*, cf. 299.

160 Maes, Alfons A.: What explains demonstrative variance in Dutch? – *NTaalk* 20/2, 2015, 228-233 | Disc. of 299.

161 Steyn, J. C.: Die laaste projek van die "Hollandse taalbeweging in Suid-Afrika": die Vereenvoudigde Hollandse Spelling. – *TsGw* 57/2-1, 2017, 233-248 | The last project of the "Dutch language movement in South Africa": the Simplified Dutch Spelling | E. & Afrikaans ab.

162 Weijer, Jeroen M. van de: But a short word on *maar*. – *NTaalk* 20/2, 2015, 243-247 | Disc. of 299.

## 14.3.3. Afrikaans

163 *Afrikaans: een drieluik* / Hans den Besten ; Frans L. M. P. Hinskens ; Jerzy Koch (red.). – Amsterdam : Stichting Neerlandistiek VU ; Münster : Nodus, 2009. – 255 p. – (Stichting Neerlandistiek VU ; 58).

164 Gunnink, Hilde: The grammatical structure of Sowetan tsotsitaal. – *SALALS* 32/2, 2014, 161-171.

165 *Kontemporere Afrikaanse taalkunde* / W. A. M. Carstens & N. Bosman, redakteurs. – Pretoria : Van Schaik, 2014. – xix, 491 p | [Contemporary Afrikaans linguistics].

166 Libert, Ekaterina A.: K voprosu o statuse nekotorych jazykov v zapadnogermanskoy jazykovoj podgruppe (afrikaans, idiš, plotdič). – *SFŽ* 3, 2010, 186-190 | On the status of some languages of the West-Germanic group (Afrikaans, Yiddish, Low German).

167 Noordegraaf, Jan: Koloniaal Nederlands in verandering Afrikaans versus Amerikaans Leeg Duits. – *AUW* 3619, *NeerlW* 24, 2014, 67-91 | Colonial Dutch in motion: South African Dutch versus American Low Dutch | E. ab.

168 Rooy, Bertus van: *Die Afrikaanse taalkunde van toeka tot nou. – (165), 1-26 | [Afrikaans linguistics from past to present]*.

169 *Taalportaal : the linguistics of Dutch, Frisian and Afrikaans online |* Online resource | Presentation by the authors, cf. 170.

170 [Woudsen, Anton van der] Woudsen, Ton van der; Audring, Jenny; Bennis, Hans; Beukema, Frits; Booij, Geert E.; Broekhuis, Hans; Corver, Norbert; Cremers, Crit; Dernison, Roderik; Dikken, Marcel den; Dyk, Siebren; Gussenhoven, Carlos; [Haan, Germen J de] Haan, Ger de; Heuven, Vincent J. van; Hoekstra, Eric; Hoekstra, Jarich; Hoogeveen, Bart; Jong, Gerbrich de; [Keizer, M Evelien] Keizer, Evelien; Kirstein, Anna; Köhnlein, Björn; Landsbergen, Frank; Linke, Kathrin; Oostendorp, Marc van; Ouddeken, Nina; Sebregts, Koen; Tiberius, Carole; Versloot, Arjen P.; Visser, Willem; Vos, Riet; Vries, Truus de; Weening, Joke: *Het Taalportaal : een nieuwe wetenschappelijke grammatica voor het Nederlands en het Fries (en het Afrikaans). – NTaal 21/1, 2016, 157-168 | Taalportaal : a new scientific grammar of Dutch and Frisian (and Afrikaans)* | E. ab | Cf. 169.

#### 0.2.4. ORGANIZATIONS

171 Odendaal, Gerda: *Die rol van die US se Departement Afrikaans en Nederlands in die ontwikkeling van die Afrikaanse leksikografie : die Nederlands-Afrikaans-stryd gedurende die aanvangsjare. – *TsGw* 56/1, 2016, 257-276 | The role of Stellenbosch University's Department of Afrikaans and Dutch in the development of Afrikaans lexicography : the Dutch-Afrikaans battle during the formative years | E. & Afrikaans ab.*

#### 0.3. LINGUISTIC THEORY AND METHODOLOGY

172 Breed, Adri; Carstens, Wannie A. M.; Olivier, Jako: *Die DBAT : 'n onbekende digitale taalkundemuseum. – *TsGw* 56/2-1, 2016, 391-409 | The DBAL : an unknown digital language museum | DBAT = *Digitale Bibliografie van die Afrikaanse Taalkunde* ("Digital Bibliography of Afrikaans Linguistics") | E. & Afrikaans ab.*

173 Huyssteen, Gerhard B. van; Botha, Melodi; Antonites, Alex: *Die Virtuele Instituut vir Afrikaans (VivA) en markbehoeftes in die Afrikaanse gemeenskap. – *TsGw* 56/2-1, 2016, 410-437 | The Virtual Institute for Afrikaans and the Afrikaans community's market needs | E. & Afrikaans ab.*

## 0.6. APPLIED LINGUISTICS

174 [Fourie, Hanelle] Fourie Blair, Hanelle: Ekwivalentverhoudings in tweetalige woordeboeke : implikasies vir die databasis van 'n elektroniese tweetalige woordeboek van Suid-Afrikaanse Gebaretaal en Afrikaans. – *Lexikos* 25, 2015, 151-169 | Equivalent relations in bilingual dictionaries : implications for the database of an electronic bilingual dictionary of South African Sign Language AND Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab.

175 Oort, Ronel van; Carstens, Wannie A. M.: Die onderrig van Afrikaanse woordeskat en variëteite vanuit 'n inklusiewe taalgeskiedkundige perspektief = Teaching Afrikaans vocabulary and varieties from an inclusive language-historical perspective. – *TsGw* 54/4, 2014, 693-707 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

## 1.1. PHONETICS

176 Wissing, Daan P.: Fonetiek. – (165), 91-125 | [Phonetics].

## 1.1.2. ACOUSTIC PHONETICS

177 Coetzee, Andries W.; Beddor, Patricia Speeter; Bouavichith, Dominique; Craft, Justin T.: Fo and plosive voicing in Afrikaans. – *JASA* 140/1, 2016, 3106 | E. ab.

178 Wissing, Daan P.: Ontronding in Afrikaans. – *TsGw* 51/1, 2011, 1-20 | E. ab.: Derounding in Afrikaans.

179 Wissing, Daan P.: Oor die status van die "oe" in Afrikaans : 'n akoesiese analise. – *TsGw* 50/1, 2010, 31-49 | E. ab.: On the status of "oe" in Afrikaans : an acoustic analysis | On the Afrikaans vowel /u/

180 Wissing, Daan P.; Pienaar, Wikus; Niekerk, Daniel van: Palatalisation of /s/ in Afrikaans. – *SPIPLUS* 48, 2015, 137-158 | E. ab.

## 1.2. PHONOLOGY

181 Bennett, William G.: Agreement, dependencies, and Surface Correspondence in Obolo and beyond. – *SPIPLUS* 44, 2014, 149-171 | E. ab | Commentary cf. 183 | Author's rejoinder cf. 645.

182 Besten, Hans den: In search of a submerged phonology : the case of early Cape Dutch Pidgin. – (37), 219-241.

183 Connell, Bruce: Another perspective on Bennett's (2014) 'Agreement, dependencies, and Surface Correspondence in Obolo and beyond'. – *SPIPLUS* 48, 2015, 9-12 | Commentary on 181.

184 Hinskens, Frans L. M. P.: The lenition and deletion of medial voiced obstruents in Afrikaans : some internal, external, and extralinguistic factors. – *JGL-SGL* 26/3, 2014, 248-271.

185 Kaplan, Abby: Incomplete neutralization and the (a)symmetry of paradigm uniformity. – (25), 319-328 | E. ab.

186 Wissing, Daan P.: Fonologie. – (165), 127-169 | [Phonology].

187 Wissing, Daan P.: Die wals van Afrikaanse "a" met "l" = The waltz of Afrikaans "a" with "l". – *TsGw* 54/2, 2014, 248-266 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

### 1.3. MOR(PHO)PHONOLOGY

188 Neijt, Anneke; Schreuder, Robert; Jansen, Carel: Van *boekenbonnen* en *feèverhale* : de tussenklank e(n) in Nederlandse en Afrikaanse samenstellingen : vorm of betekenis? – *NTaalk* 15/2, 2010, 125-147 | E. ab.

189 Wissing, Daan P.: Oor die onstabiele klemtoongedrag van Afrikaanse reduplikasies. – *SALALS* 28/1, 2010, 13-23 | E. ab.: On the unstable stress behaviour of Afrikaans reduplications | E. & Afrikaans ab., E. conclusion.

## 2. GRAMMAR, MORPHOSYNTAX

190 Besten, Hans den: Afrikaans relatief "wat" en de West-Germaanse relativisatiesystemen. – *TeT* 48/themanummer, 1996, 12-34.

191 Besten, Hans den: Demonstratives in Afrikaans and Cape Dutch Pidgin : a first attempt. – (5), 201-219.

192 Breed, Adri: Aspek in Afrikaans : 'n teoretiese beskrywing. – *TsGw* 56/1, 2016, 62-80 | Aspect in Afrikaans : a theoretical description | E. & Afrikaans ab.

193 Breed, Adri; Huyssteen, Gerhard B. van: *Aan die* en *besig* in Afrikaanse progressiwiteitskonstruksies : die ontstaan en ontwikkeling (1) = *Aan die* and *besig* in Afrikaans progressive constructions : the origin and development (1). – *TsGw* 54/4, 2014, 708-725 | Cf. 194 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

194 Breed, Adri; Huyssteen, Gerhard B. van: *Aan die* en *besig* in Afrikaanse progressiwiteitskonstruksies : 'n korpusondersoek (2) = *Aan die* and *besig* in Afrikaans progressive construction : a corpus investigation (2). – *TsGw* 55/2, 2015, 251-269 | Cf. 193 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

195 Ellis, Carla; Conradie, Simone; Huddlestone, Kate: The acquisition of grammatical gender in L2 German by learners with Afrikaans, English or Italian as their L1. – *SPL* 41, 2012, 17-27 | E. ab.

196 Rosenbach, Anette: Constraints in contact : animacy in English and Afrikaans genitive variation – a cross-linguistic perspective. – *Glossa* 2/1, 2017, 72 | E. ab.

## 2.1. MORPHOLOGY AND WORD-FORMATION

197 Butler, Anneke: Die deelwoord as 'n ander vorm van die werkwoord. – *TsGw* 56/1, 2016, 81-101 | The participle as a different form of the verb | E. & Afrikaans ab.

198 Huyssteen, Gerhard B. van: Morfologie. – (165), 171-208 | [Morphology].

199 Kürschner, Sebastian: Morphological non-blocking in Dutch plural allomorphy : a contrastive approach. – *STUF* 62/4, 2009, 285-306.

200 Prędota, Stanisław: Morfologia języka niderlandzkiego i języka afrikaans. – (15), 387-399 | Dutch and Afrikaans morphology | G. ab.

201 Prędota, Stanisław: On the morphology of Dutch and Afrikaans. – *PhWAS* 4, 2011, 143-152.

### 2.1.2. DERIVATIONAL MORPHOLOGY

202 Besten, Hans den: Reduplication in Afrikaans / With Carla Luijks and Paul T. Roberge. – (509), 195-219 | First publ. in 1043.

## 2.2. SYNTAX

203 Berghoff, Robyn: Movement in the Afrikaans left periphery : a view from anti-locality. – *SPL* 48, 2017, 35-50 | E. ab.

204 Besten, Hans den: Afrikaans relative 'wat' and West-Germanic relativization systems. – (509), 41-59 | Translation of 190.

205 Besten, Hans den: The complex ancestry of the Afrikaans associative constructions. – (509), 25-33 | First publ. in 2001.

206 Besten, Hans den: Double negation and the genesis of Afrikaans. – (509), 221-256 | First publ. in 1987.

207 Besten, Hans den: Is there "preposition stranding in COMP" in Afrikaans? No way!. – (45), 57-63.

208 Besten, Hans den: The origins of the Afrikaans pre-nominal possessive system(s). – (509), 7-23.

209 Besten, Hans den: What a little word can do for you : *wat* in Afrikaans possessive relatives. – (509), 35-39 | First publ. in 1999 | Appendix to *LB* 1983, 8577 and 190.

210 Biberauer, Theresa: Doubling vs. omission : insights from Afrikaans negation. – (79), 103-140.

211 Biberauer, Theresa; Potgieter, Jean-Marie: Negative exclamatives in Afrikaans : some initial thoughts. – *SPIL* 48, 2017, 17-33 | E. ab.

212 Biberauer, Theresa; Zeijlstra, Hedde: Negative changes : three factors and the diachrony of Afrikaans negation. – (143), 238-264.

213 Botha, Morné; Oosthuizen, Johan: Die struktuur van die linker-sins-grens in Afrikaans. – *SPILPLUS* 37, 2009, 1-68 | [The structure of the left sentence boundary in Afrikaans].

214 Breed, Adri; Brisard, Frank: Postulére werkwoorde as progressiewe merkers in Afrikaans en Nederlands. – *IN* 53/1, 2015, 3-28 | E. ab.

215 Breed, Adri; Brisard, Frank; Verhoeven, Ben: Periphrastic progressive constructions in Dutch and Afrikaans : a contrastive analysis. – *JGL-SGL* 29/4, 2017, 305-378 | E. ab.

216 Colleman, Timothy; Feinauer, Ilse; Braeckeveldt, Charlotte: Over lexikale voorkeuren in de alternantie tussen de "skoon bysin" en de "dat-bysin" : een distinctieve collexeemanalyse. – *TsGw* 56/1, 2016, 117-133 | On lexical preferences in the alternation between the *skoon bysin* "bare complement clause" and the *dat-bysin* "that-complement clause" : a distinctive collexeme analysis | E. & Afrikaans ab.

217 Conradie, C. Jac: Willens en wetens : perspektiewe op die Afrikaanse werkwoord *wil*. – *TsGw* 56/1, 2016, 7-24 | Willing and knowing : perspectives on the Afrikaans verb *wil* | E. & Afrikaans ab.

218 Corver, Norbert; Koppen, Marjo van: NP-ellipsis with adjectival remnants : a micro-comparative perspective. – *NLT* 29/2, 2011, 371-421 | A contrastive analysis of Afrikaans, (standard & dialectal) Dutch, Frisian and English.

219 Feinauer, Ilse; Ponelis, Fritz: Basiese Afrikaanse sintaksis. – (165), 209-242 | [Basic Afrikaans syntax].

220 [Horst, Johannes M van der] Horst, Joop van der: Vaste werkwoordeltjke verbindingen in het Nederlands en het Afrikaans. – *TNA* 15/1, 2008, 29-43 | [Fixed verbal combinations in Dutch and Afrikaans] | E. ab.

221 Huddleston, Kate: *Negative indefinites in Afrikaans*. – Utrecht : LOT, 2010. – xvi, 331 p. – (LOT dissertation series ; 250) | Utrecht Univ. diss.

222 Huddleston, Kate; Swart, Henriëtte de: A bidirectional Optimality Theoretic analysis of multiple negative indefinites in Afrikaans. – *SPIL* 43, 2014, 137-164 | E. ab.

223 Jordaan, Adéle: Afrikaanse verbandsmerkers : uitbreiding en her-kategorisering van voorbeeldwoorde. – *SALALS* 34/2, 2016, 147-167 | Afrikaans transition markers: expansion and reclassification of example words | Afrikaans ab.

224 Kampen, Jacqueline van: Afrikaans directionality switch in 'triple' V-clusters with the auxiliary *het*. – *LIN* 34, 2017, 77-91 | E. ab.

225 Kirsten, Johanita: The use of *was* in Afrikaans passive constructions : a diachronic corpus study. – *SALALS* 33/2, 2015, 159-170.

226 Kirsten, Johanita: Veranderinge in adverbiale tydsverwysing in Afrikaans van 1911 tot 2010. – *TsGw* 56/1, 2016, 45-61 | Changes in adverbial temporal reference in Afrikaans from 1911 to 2010 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

227 Kotzé, Ernst F.: Aspects of congruence and divergence relating to adjectives in Dutch and Afrikaans. – *NTaalk* 21/2, 2016, 215-227 | E. ab.

228 Messerschmidt, J. J. E.: Die gebruik van die onderskikker *wanneer* in hipotaktiese verbindings. – *TsGw* 49/1, 2009, 160-178 | E. ab.: The use of the subordinating conjunction "wanneer" (when) in hypotactic binding | E. & Afrikaans ab.

229 Messerschmidt, J. J. E.: Die gebruik van die voegwoord *wanneer* in brysinsinlywing. – *TsGw* 48/1, 2008, 23-40 | E. ab.: The use of the Afrikaans conjunction "wanneer" (when) in subordinate clause embedding.

230 Messerschmidt, J. J. E.; Messerschmidt, H. J.: Voorwaardelike konstruksies met *indien* soos gebruik in wetenskaplike tydskrifte (deel 2: gemerkte konstruksies). – *TsGw* 52/2, 2012, 271-289 | E. ab.: Conditional constructions using "indien" in scientific journals (part 2: marked constructions) | Cf. 312.

231 Oosthuizen, Johan: Obligatory reflexivity in a Minimalist grammar of Afrikaans. – *SPIPLUS* 42, 2013, 205-241 | E. ab.

232 Oosthuizen, Johan: *Obligatory reflexivity in Afrikaans : a minimalist approach*. – Stellenbosch : Universiteit van Stellenbosch, 2013. – [7], 186 p. | Diss. at Univ. of Stellenbosch, March 2013 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

233 Oosthuizen, Johan: Reflexives and reflexive constructions in Afrikaans. – *SPIPLUS* 47, 2015, 99-127 | E. ab.

234 Potgieter, Anneke Perold: A comparative analysis of passive constructions in English, Afrikaans and isiXhosa : grammar and acquisition. – *SPIL* 47, 2017, 27-66 | E. ab.

235 Pretorius, Erin: Having fun with *van* : a Nanosyntactic take on syncretism. – *SPIPLUS* 42, 2013, 243-261 | E. ab.

236 Pretorius, Erin; Oosthuizen, Johan: A nanosyntactic analysis of Afrikaans passive participles. – *SALALS* 30/4, 2012, 449-467.

237 Pretorius, Erin: The secret nominal life of Afrikaans intransitive adpositions. – *SPIL* 48, 2017, 9-16 | E. ab.

238 Pretorius, Erin: *Spelling out P: a unified syntax of Afrikaans adpositions and V-particles*. – Utrecht : LOT, 2017. – xiv, 349 p. – (LOT dissertation series ; 363) | Diss. at the Univ. of Utrecht, 2 June 2017 | Du. summary p. 341-345.

239 Rooy, Bertus van; Kruger, Haidee: Faktore wat die weglatting van die Afrikaanse onderskikker *dat* bepaal. – *TsGw* 56/1, 2016, 102-116 | Factors that determine the omission of the Afrikaans complementiser *dat* “that” | E. & Afrikaans ab.

240 Taraldsen, Knut Tarald: NPE, gender and the countable/mass distinction. – *SPIL* 48, 2017, 161-181 | E. ab | NPE = noun phrase ellipsis.

241 Vos, Mark de: Afrikaans mixed adposition orders as a PF-linearization effect. – (34), 333-357.

242 Wet, Annette de; Ferreira, Camille: Sintaktiese patroonmatighede in advertensietaal. – *SALALS* 35/1, 2017, 121-134 | [Syntactic patterns in advertising language] | E. & Afrikaans ab.

243 [Zwart, C. Jan Wouter] Zwart, Jan-Wouter: A note on the periphrastic past in Afrikaans. – *SPIL* 48, 2017, 1-8 | E. ab.

### 3.2. LEXICOGRAPHY

244 Gouws, Rufus H.: Aspects of Afrikaans lexicography. – (82), 827-835.

245 Gouws, Rufus H.: Enkele minder bekende Afrikaanse woordeboekmonumente. – *TsGw* 56/2-1, 2016, 355-370 | A few lesser known Afrikaans dictionary monuments | E. & Afrikaans ab.

246 Gouws, Rufus H.: Leksikografie. – (165), 373-407 | [Lexicography].

247 Gouws, Rufus H.: Die leksikografiese aanbieding en behandeling van vaste uitdrukkings. – *Lexikos* 23, 2013, 135-149 | E. ab.: The lexicographic presentation and treatment of fixed expressions | E. & Afrikaans ab.

248 Merwe, Michele F. van der: Kriteria vir woordeboekwerkboeke in Afrikaans. – (43), 280-294 | Criteria for dictionary workbooks in Afrikaans | E. & Fr. ab.

249 Odendaal, Gerda: Die rol van die US se Departement Afrikaans en Nederlands in die ontwikkeling van die Afrikaanse leksikografie onder Nederlandse invloed : verklarende standaardwoordeboeke. – *Lexikos* 26, 2016, 193-219 | The role of Stellenbosch University's department of Afrikaans and Dutch in the development of Afrikaans lexicography : development under Dutch influence | E. & Afrikaans ab.

250 Plessis, André du: A functional analysis of the e-WAT with specific focus on the mobile version : towards a model for improvement. – *Lexikos* 24, 2014, 75-93 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

251 Plessis, André du: Die rol van die bruikbaarheidsbenadering binne die e-leksikografie. – *Literator* 38/2, 2017, 11 p. | The role of usability in e-lexicography | E. & Afrikaans ab.

252 Prinsloo, D. J.: The quality, relevance and usefulness of ever-increasing amounts of internet data to lexicography : the case of Afrikaans. – *Lexicographica* 28, 2012, 3-11.

253 Prinsloo, D. J.; Taljard, Elsabé: Afrikataalleksikografie : gister, vandag en mōre. – *Lexikos* 27, 2017, 427-456 | African language lexicography : yesterday, today and tomorrow | E. & Afrikaans ab.

254 Prinsloo, D. J.: Die verifiëring, verfyning en toepassing van leksikografiese liniale vir Afrikaans. – *Lexikos* 20, 2010, 390-409 | E. ab.: The verification, refinement and application of lexicographic rulers for Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab.

255 Smit, Maria: Rufus Gouws se rol in die bekendstelling van H. E. Wiegand se metaleksikografie en terminologie in die Suider-Afrikaanse konteks. – (43), 244-258 | Rufus Gouws's role in the introduction of H. E. Wiegand's metalexicography and terminology in the Southern African context | E. & Afrikaans ab.

256 Tarp, Sven; Gouws, Rufus H.: Skoolwoordeboeke vir huistaalleerders van Afrikaans. – *Lexikos* 20, 2010, 466-494 | E. ab.: School dictionaries for home language learners of Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab.

### 3.2.1. MONOLINGUAL LEXICOGRAPHY

257 *Afrikaanse woordelys en spelreëls / saamgestel deur die Taalkommissie van die Suid-Afrikaanse Akademie vir Wetenskap en Kuns.* – Kaapstad : Pharos, 2017. – xxxii, 757 p. | [Afrikaans word list and spelling rules].

258 Ball, Liezl H.; Bothma, Theo J. D.: A usability evaluation of the prototype *Afrikaanse idiome-woordeboek*. – *Lexikos* 27, 2017, 78-106 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

259 [Bosman, Nerina] Bosman, N.; Otto, Anna Nel: Die hantering van neweskikkers en onderskikkers in Afrikaanse woordeboeke. – *Lexikos* 22, 2012, 69-85 | E. ab.: The treatment of coordinating and subordinating conjunctions in Afrikaans dictionaries | E. & Afrikaans ab.

260 Bosman, Nerina; Taljard, Elsabé; [Prinsloo, D. J.] Prinsloo, Danie: Honderd jaar *Afrikaanse Woordelys en Spelreëls* : 'n oorsig en waardering. Deel 1: Die woordelys. – *TsGw* 57/2-1, 2017, 285-301 | One hundred years of *Afrikaanse Woordelys en Spelreëls* : an overview and evaluation. Part 1: The wordlist | E. & Afrikaans ab.

261 Botha, Willem F.: Ensiklopedisiteit in die *Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse taal* : 'n "saak" van balans. – *Lexikos* 19, 2009, 23-33 | E. ab.

262 Elektroniese WAT (*Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse taal, A tot R*). – Stellenbosch : Buro van die WAT, 2009. – CD-Rom.

263 Feinauer, A. E.: Die agste deel van die *Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse Taal*. – *TsGw* 33/4, 1993, 286-298 | Rev. art. on 73 | E. ab.

264 Feinauer, Ilse: Doen die *Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse taal* deel XII dit vir die Afrikaanse taal en die Suid-Afrikaanse leksikografie? – *Lexikos* 17, 2007, 259-277 | E. & Afrikaans ab | Rev. art. of 276.

265 Feinauer, Ilse: Die negende deel van die *Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse Taal*. – *Lexikos* 6, 1996, 233-271 | E. & Afrikaans ab | Rev. art. on 274, 9.

266 Huyssteen, Gerhard B. van: Die aard, doel en omvang van die *Afrikaanse Woordelys en Spelreëls*. Deel 1. – *TsGw* 57/2-1, 2017, 323-345 | The nature, goal, and scope of the *Afrikaanse Woordelys en Spelreëls*. Part 1 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

267 Huyssteen, Gerhard B. van: Opname- en elimineringeskriteria vir die *Afrikaanse Woordelys en Spelreëls* : die geval *emeritus*. Deel 2. – *TsGw* 57/2-1, 2017, 346-368 | Inclusion and elimination criteria for the *Afrikaanse Woordelys en Spelreëls* : the case of *emeritus*. Part 2 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

268 Labuschagne, F. J.; Eksteen, L. C.: *Verklarende Afrikaanse woordeboek*. – Kaapstad : Pharos, 2010. – xiv, 1580 p | 8th ed. cf. 269.

269 Labuschagne, F. J.; Eksteen, L. C.: *Verklarende Afrikaanse woordeboek*. – Pretoria : Van Schaik, 1993. – 1117 p.

270 Otto, Anna Nel: 'n Kritiese waardering van die *Afrikaanse Woordelys en Spelreëls* – AWS (2009). – *TsGw* 57/2-1, 2017, 271-284 | A critical appraisal of the *Afrikaanse Woordelys en Spelreëls* – AWS (2009) | E. & Afrikaans ab.

271 Otto, Anna Nel: 'n Kritiese waardering van die hantering van kollokasiest en idiome in die HAT (2005). – (43), 188-195 | A critical appreciation of the treatment of collocations and idioms in the *HAT* (2005) | HAT = *Verklarende Handwoordeboek van die Afrikaanse Taal* | E. & Afrikaans ab.

272 Swanepoel, Piet H.: *Evalueringskriteria en die interaksie tussen die leksikografieteorie en -praktyk : die ontwerp van die Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse taal as gevallestudie*. – *Lexikos* 24, 2014, 378-401 | E. ab.: *Evaluation criteria and the interaction between lexicographic theory and practice : the design of the Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse taal as case study* | E. & Afrikaans ab | Cf. 278.

273 Taljard, Elsabé; [Prinsloo, D. J.] Prinsloo, Dannie; Bosman, Nerina: *Honderd jaar Afrikaanse Woordelys en Spelreëls : 'n oorsig en waardering*. Deel 2: Die gebruiker in fokus. – *TsGw* 57/2-1, 2017, 302-322 | One hundred years of *Afrikaanse Woordelys en Spelreëls* : an overview and evaluation. Part 2: The user in focus | E. & Afrikaans ab.

274 *Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse taal*. Tiende deel. M / Hoofdred. D. J. van Schalkwyk ; eindred. J. C. M. D. du Plessis ; bestuurder red. steun-dienste Pieter Hartevedel ; senior medered. F. J. Lombard ; medered. Marié M. Nel ; Willem F. Botha ; Aletta E. van Niekerk ; medered. (termyn) Liza Rademeyer ; G. J. van Wyk ; B. P. D. Gabriels. – Stellenbosch : Buro van die WAT, 1996. – xx, 660 p | Cf. 280 & 265.

275 *Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse taal*. Elfde deel. N - O / Hoofdred. D. J. van Schalkwyk ; eindred. J. C. M. D. du Plessis ; senior medered. F. J. Lombard ; medered. Willem F. Botha ; G. J. van Wyk ; medered. (termyn) Liza Rademeyer ; B. P. D. Gabriels ; P. A. Louw. – Stellenbosch : Buro van die WAT, 2000. – xxii, 935 p | Cf. 274.

276 *Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse taal*. Twaalfde deel. P-Q / Hoofredakteur Willem F. Botha ; eindredakteur F. J. Lombard ; senior mederedakteur G. J. van Wyk ; mederedakteurs Liza Rademeyer ; B. P. D. Gabriels ; Phillip A. Louw. – Stellenbosch : Buro van die WAT, 2005. – xxiii, 760 p. | Cf. 275.

277 *Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse taal*. Dertiende deel. R / Hoofredakteur Willem F. Botha ; eindredakteur F. J. Lombard ; senior mederedakteur G. J. van Wyk ; mederedakteurs Liza Rademeyer ; B. P. D. Gabriels ; Aletta E. Cloete ; Hanelle Fourie. – Stellenbosch : Buro van die WAT, 2009. – xxi, 541 p. | Cf. 276.

278 *Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse taal*. XIV. S - Skooi / Hoofred.: W. F. Botha. – Stellenbosch : Buro van die WAT, 2013. – xxi, 674 p. | Cf. 277.

279 *Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse taal*. Agste deel. kos - kyw- / Hoofred. D. C. Hauptfleisch ; assistent-hoofred. J. C. M. D. du Plessis; senior medered. D. J. van Schalkwyk ; medered. Pieter Hartevedel [et al.]. – Stellenbosch : Buro van die WAT, 1991. – xxiii, 584 p.

280 *Woordeboek van die Afrikaanse taal*. Negende deel. L / Hoofred. D. J. van Schalkwyk ; eindred. J. C. M. D. du Plessis ; bestuurder red. steun-dienste Pieter Harteveld ; senior medered. F. J. Lombard ; medered. Marié M. Nel ; Willem F. Botha ; Aletta E. van Niekerk. – Stellenbosch : Buro van die WAT, 1994. – xxii, 516 p. | Cf. 279.

### 3.2.2. PLURILINGUAL LEXICOGRAPHY

281 Bergenholtz, Henning; Bothma, Theo J. D.; Gouws, Rufus H.: A model for integrated dictionaries of fixed expressions. – (10), 34-42 | Electronic publ.

282 Beyer, Herman L.: Die naslaanpotensiaal van lemmakandidate vir 'n monofunksionele beknopte Nederlands-Afrikaans-woordeboek. – *SPIPLUS* 47, 2015, 19-33 | The consultation potential of lemma candidates for a monofunctional concise Dutch-Afrikaans dictionary | E. & Afrikaans ab.

283 Conradie, C. Jac: Het "Beknopt Afrikaans-Nederlands woordenboek met Engelse equivalenten" van A. A. F. Teurlinckx. – *AUW* 3472, *NeerIW* 21, 2012, 127-139 | E. ab.

284 Fourie, Hanelle: 'n Leksikografiese model vir 'n elektroniese tweetalige grondslagfasewoordeboek van Suid-Afrikaanse Gebaretaal en Afrikaans. – Stellenbosch : Universiteit van Stellenbosch, 2013. – [16], 446 p. | [Lexicographical model for an electronic bilingual dictionary of South African Sign Language and Afrikaans] | Diss. at Univ. of Stellenbosch, March 2013 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

285 Gouws, Rufus H.: *ANNA* : 'n nuwe leksikografiese benadering met nuwe strukture vir ou funksies en gevestigde gebruikers. – *TNA* 18/2, 2011, 3-13 | *ANNA* : a new lexicographic approach with new structures for old functions and established users | E. ab.

286 Gouws, Rufus H.; Leroyer, Patrick: Verhoogde leksikografiese toeganklikheid in die oorgang van 'n toeristewoordeboek na 'n toeristegids as naslaanbron. – *TsGw* 49/1, 2009, 145-159 | E. ab.: Increased lexicographic accessibility in the transition from a tourist dictionary to a tourist guide | E. & Afrikaans ab.

287 Gouws, Rufus H.; Prinsloo, D. J.: Surrogaatkwivalensie in tweetalige woordeboeke met spesifieke verwysing na zero-ekwivalensie in Afrikataalwoordeboeke. – *TsGw* 50/4, 2010, 502-519 | E. ab.: Surrogate equivalence in bilingual dictionaries with specific reference to zero equivalence in dictionaries for African languages | E. & Afrikaans ab.

288 Kotzé, Ernst F.: 'n Ortografiese brug tussen Japannees en Afrikaans : die keuse van 'n romeinse transliterasiesisteem. – *TsGw* 56/2-1, 2016, 438-453 | An orthographic bridge between Japanese and Afrikaans : the choice of a roman transliteration system | E. & Afrikaans ab.

289 Martin, Willy: Amalgamated bilingual dictionaries. – (44), 437-449.

290 Martin, Willy: *ANNA* : een WOORDENBOEK met een NAAM (en wat er ACHTER steek). – *TNA* 18/2, 2011, 14-27 | [ANNA : a dictionary with a name (and what lies behind it)] | E. ab.

291 Potgieter, Liezl: Leksikografiese seleksie as deel van die samestellingsproses van 'n vakwoordeboek vir vertalers. – (43), 196-211 | Lexicographic selection as part of the compilation process of a specialist dictionary for translators | E. & Afrikaans ab.

292 Prinsloo, D. J.: 'n Kritiese beskouing van woordeboeke met geamalgameerde lemmalyste. – *Lexikos* 23, 2013, 371-393 | E. ab.: A critical examination of dictionaries with amalgamated lemmalists | E. & Afrikaans ab.

### 3.3. ETYMOLOGY

293 Bergerson, Jeremy: On the origin of the Afrikaans pronoun *watter*. – *NOWELE* 60 61, 2011, 171-185.

294 Prinsloo, Anton F.: *Die aap in jou koffie : Afrikaanse eponieme van A tot Z*. – Pretoria : Protea Boekhuis, 2011. – 351 p | [The monkey in your coffee : Afrikaans eponyms from A to Z].

### 3.4. TERMINOLOGY

295 Beukes, Anne-Marie; Pienaar, Marné: Die vertaling van 'n vertaalterminologielys in Afrikaans : 'n prosesbeskrywing. – (41), 61-74 | [The translation of translating terminology in Afrikaans : a description of the process] | Afrikaans ab.

296 Cornelius, Eleanor; Pienaar, Marné: Die vertaling en lokalisering van terminologie van het tolken vir 'n Suid-Afrikaanse teikengehoor. – *SPL* 47, 2017, 181-201 | [The translation and localization of interpreter terminology for a South African target audience] | E. ab.

### 3.5. PHRASEOLOGY, PAROEMIOLOGY

297 Prędota, Stanisław: On the morphology of proverbs in Afrikaans and Dutch. – *AJMPH* 1, 2012, 99-106.

## 4. SEMANTICS AND PRAGMATICS

298 Boogaart, Ronny; Foolen, Ad: Discussion of Robert S. Kirsner, *Qualitative-quantitative analyses of Dutch and Afrikaans grammar and lexicon*. – *NTaalk* 20/2, 2015, 215-217 | Introd. to six articles discussing 299.

299 Kirsner, Robert S.: *Qualitative-quantitative analyses of Dutch and Afrikaans grammar and lexicon*. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2014. – xi, 239 p. – (Studies in functional and structural linguistics ; 67) | Disc. cf. 298 ; 158 ; 59 ; 160 ; 157 ; 162 ; 156 ; and author's rejoinder, cf. 159.

## 4.1. SEMANTICS

300 Bosman, Nerina; Pienaar, Marné: Afrikaanse semantiek. – (165), 245-274 | [Afrikaans semantics].

301 Bylund, Emanuel; Athanasopoulos, Panos; Oostendorp, Marcellyn: Motion event cognition and grammatical aspect : evidence from Afrikaans. – *Linguistics* 51/5, 2013, 929-955.

302 Niekerk, Angelique van; Lubbe, Elmarie: Retoriese stylfigure as intellektuele spel in advertensiekommunikasie = Rhetorical figures as intellectual play in advertising communication. – *TsGw* 54/3, 2014, 446-462 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

## 4.1.1. LEXICAL SEMANTICS

303 [Bosman, Nerina] Bosman, N.: EET en DRINK in Afrikaans : 'n leksikaal-semantiese ondersoek = EATING and DRINKING in Afrikaans : a lexical semantic study. – *TsGw* 55/1, 2015, 123-146 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

304 Carney, Terrence R.: 'n Forensies-semantiese beskouing van die woordgebruik 'onkoste' in die hofsaak *Commissioner for South African Revenue Service vs. Labat Africa Limited*. – *SALALS* 30/4, 2012, 487-496.

## 4.1.2. GRAMMATICAL SEMANTICS

305 Biberauer, Theresa; Zeijlstra, Hedde: Negative concord in Afrikaans : filling a typological gap. – *JSem* 29/3, 2012, 345-371.

306 Breed, Adri: The subjective use of postural verb in Afrikaans (I) : evolution from progressive to modal. – *SPILPLUS* 52, 2017, 1-21 | E. ab.

307 Breed, Adri: The subjective use of postural verbs in Afrikaans (II) : a corpus analysis of *CPV en* in Zefrikaans. – *SPIPLUS* 52, 2017, 23-43 | E. ab.

308 Conradie, C. Jac: Is *regtig* r  ig Duits *richtig*? – *TsGw* 51/4, 2011, 716-729 | Is *regtig* really German *richtig*?

309 Fouch  , Nadine; Berg, Ria van den; Olivier, Jako: Carstens se raamwerk van Afrikaanse konjunksiemeerkers : 'n akkurater en vollediger weergawe. – *TsGw* 57/3, 2017, 814-836 | Carstens's framework of Afrikaans conjunction markers : a more accurate and complete version | E. & Afrikaans ab.

310 Kirsner, Robert S.: Instructional meanings, iconicity, and *l'arbitraire du signe* in the analysis of the Afrikaans demonstratives. – (64), 97-137.

311 Messerschmidt, J. J. E.; Bergh, Luna: Met kerse op *met*-konstruksies : 'n verwysingspuntperspektief. – *SALALS* 29/1, 2011, 97-113 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

312 Messerschmidt, J. J. E.; Messerschmidt, H. J.: Voorwaardelike konstruksies met *indien* soos gebruik in wetenskaplike tydskrifte (deel 1 : basiese konstruksies). – *TsGw* 51/2, 2011, 124-141 | E. ab.: Conditional constructions with "indien" (if), as used in scientific journals (part 1 : basic constructions).

#### 4.2. PRAGMATICS, DISCOURSE ANALYSIS AND TEXT GRAMMAR

313 Anthonissen, Christine; Meyer, Bernd: Question-answer sequences between doctors and patients in a South African HIV/AIDS day clinic. – *SPIPLUS* 36, 2008, 1-34.

314 Conradie, C. Jac: Die gebruik van Afrikaanse modale partikels deur voormalige Khoisprekers. – *SPIPLUS* 47, 2015, 35-57 | The use of Afrikaans modal particles by former Khoi speakers | E. & Afrikaans ab.

315 Conradie, C. Jac: What is inherent in a word? : a look at Dutch *eigenlijk*, Afrikaans *eintlik* and German *eigentlich*. – *GermL* 206-209, 2010, 365-394.

316 Jantjies, Wesley; Dulm, Ondene van: *Mos* as a discourse marker in rural Cape Afrikaans. – *LM* 43/1, 2012, 3-20 | E. ab.

317 Niekerk, Angelique van: A discourse-analytical approach to intertextual advertisements : a model to describe a dominant world-view. – *SALALS* 26/4, 2008, 495-512.

318 Niekerk, Angelique van; Olivier, Jako: Pragmatiek. – (165), 275-309 | [Pragmatics].

319 Simon, Horst J.: Zur Grammatik der indirekten Anrede im Afrikaans und im älteren Deutsch. – *GermL* 206-209, 2010, 395-426 | E. ab.

#### 5. STYLISTICS

320 Breed, Adri: Die hedetyd is iets van die verlede : 'n taalkundige motivering vir die 'hedetydskryfkunstradisie' in Afrikaans. – *Literator* 34/2, 2013, 9 p. | The present is a thing of the past : possible linguistic motivations for the 'present tense writing tradition' in Afrikaans prose | E. & Afrikaans ab.

321 Hendricks, Frank: Op die taalspore van S. V. Petersen : 'n blik op sy verrekening van taaldiversiteit. – *TNA* 17/2, 2010, 21-37 | [On the language tracks of S. V. Petersen : a look at his translation of language diversity] | E. ab.

#### 7. TRANSLATION

322 Du Preez, Erica S.; Naudé, Jacobus A.: The culture-specific nature of headlines in *Finansies & tegniek* and *Finance week*. – *SALALS* 26/4, 2008, 513-523.

323 Murdoch, Alan: Strategies used in the translation of fixed expressions in magazines : a comparison of selected texts with Afrikaans as source language and South African English as target language. – *Literator* 38/2, 2017, 9 p | E. & Afrikaans ab.

324 Naudé, Jacobus A.: The role of pseudo-translations in early Afrikaans travel writing. – *SALALS* 26/1, 2008, 97-106.

325 [Neethling, Siebert J.] Neethling, Bertie: Challenges in translating RL Pethi's Xhosa novel *Kwazidenge* into Afrikaans. – *SAfrJAL* 36/1, 2016, 103-108.

326 Vyver, Corné van der: Die oorsetting van 'n bybelteks na Niestandaardaafrikaans : die kunssinnigheids- en kreatiewe aspekte daaragter. – *TsGw* 51/3, 2011, 289-303 | E. ab.: The intralingual translation or rewording of a bible text into non-standard Afrikaans : the artistic and creative aspects behind it.

#### 7.1. MACHINE TRANSLATION

327 Ehlers, Leandra; Hanekom, Gert van der Merwe: An overview of the EtsaTrans machine translation system : compilation of an administrative domain. – *Literator* 29/1, 2008, 231-247 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

328 Lotz, Susan; Rensburg, Alta van: Omission and other sins : tracking the quality of online machine translation output over four years. – *SPL* 46, 2016, 77-97 | E. ab.

329 Lotz, Susan; Rensburg, Alta van: Translation technology explored : has a three-year maturation period done Google Translate any good? – *SPLPLUS* 43, 2014, 235-259 | E. ab.

## 8. SCRIPT, ORTHOGRAPHY

330 Kotzé, Ernst F.: Arabic Afrikaans – early standardisation of Afrikaans orthography : a discussion of *The Afrikaans of the Cape muslims* by Achmat Davids. – *SALALS* 30/3, 2012, 413-427 | Rev. art. of 501.

### 8.1. ORTHOGRAPHY

331 Alberts, Mariëtta: The Afrikaans orthographic rules as guide for other South African languages. – *Lexikos* 23, 2013, 1-28 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

332 McLachlan, J. D. (Tom): Oor die skryfwyse van Afrikaans I. – *TsGw* 56/4-2, 2016, 1280-1282 | [On the spelling of Afrikaans I].

333 McLachlan, J. D. (Tom): Oor die skryfwyse van Afrikaans II. – *TsGw* 57/1, 2017, 227-229 | [On the spelling of Afrikaans II] | Cf. part I: 332.

334 McLachlan, J. D. (Tom): Oor die skryfwyse van Afrikaans III. – *TsGw* 57/2-2, 2017, 685-687 | [On the spelling of Afrikaans III] | Cf. part II: 333.

335 McLachlan, J. D. (Tom): Oor die skryfwyse van Afrikaans IV. – *TsGw* 57/4, 2017, 1109-1110 | [On the spelling of Afrikaans IV] | Cf. part III: 334.

### 8.2. PUNCTUATION

336 McLachlan, J. D. (Tom): Oor deeltekens en koppeltekens. – *TsGw* 57/3, 2017, 871-873 | [On division markers and connective markers].

#### 9.2.2. LANGUAGE COMPREHENSION

337 Sousa, Diana de: Cognitive processing skills in monolingual and bilingual South African children : implications for assessment in linguistically diverse societies. – *LM* 43/1, 2012, 97-112 | E. ab.

## 9.3.1. FIRST LANGUAGE ACQUISITION, CHILD LANGUAGE

338 Southwood, Frenette: Towards a dialect-neutral assessment instrument for the language skills of Afrikaans-speaking children : the role of socioeconomic status. – *JChL* 40/2, 2013, 415-437.

## 9.3.1.1. FIRST LANGUAGE ACQUISITION BY PRE-SCHOOL CHILDREN

339 Brink, Nina; Breed, Adri: Hoe jong Afrikaanssprekende kinders betekenis aan hul vroeë taalgebruik verbind. – *TsGw* 57/4, 2017, 1012-1036 | The way in which young Afrikaans children connect meaning to their early vocabulary | E. & Afrikaans ab.

## 9.3.1.2. FIRST LANGUAGE ACQUISITION BY SCHOOL CHILDREN

340 Merwe, Kristin van der; Adendorff, Ralph D.: Comprehension and production of figurative language by Afrikaans-speaking children with and without specific language impairment. – *SALALS* 30/1, 2012, 39-63.

341 Merwe, Kristin van der; Southwood, Frenette: First and second language child speakers of Afrikaans's knowledge of figurative language. – *PerLinguam* 24/1, 2008, 45-64 | E. ab.

342 Southwood, Frenette: The presence of a primary male caregiver affects children's language skills. – *SPIL* 39, 2010, 75-84 | E. ab.

## 9.3.2. SECOND LANGUAGE ACQUISITION

343 Conradie, Simone: "Unlearning" construction types transferred from the L1 : evidence from adult L1 Afrikaans L2 French. – *SPILPLUS* 40, 2010, 11-26 | E. ab.

## 9.4. NEUROLINGUISTICS AND LANGUAGE DISORDERS

344 Theron, Janina; Conradie, Simone; Schoeman, Renata: Pragmatic assessment of schizophrenic bilinguals' L1 and L2 use. – *SALALS* 29/4, 2011, 515-531.

## 9.4.2.1. DISORDERS OF LANGUAGE DEVELOPMENT

345 Corver, Norbert; Southwood, Frenette; Hout, Roeland van: Specific language impairment as a syntax-phonology (PF) interface problem : evidence from Afrikaans. – *SPIL* 41, 2012, 71-89 | E. ab.

346 Klop, Daleen; Visser, Monique; Boysen, Lara; Fourie, Yolande; Smit, Delanie; Merwe, Heleen van der: The effect of a shared visual context during the presentation of elicitation stimuli on the narratives of young children with and without language impairment. – *SPIL* 42, 2013, 1-14 | E. ab.

347 Oosthuizen, Helena; Höhle, Barbara; Southwood, Frenette: Motion events in Afrikaans : their expression by adult speakers and by children with and without language impairment. – *SPILPLUS* 40, 2010, 55-77 | E. ab.

348 Southwood, Frenette; Carinus, Matty; Engelbrecht, Salomé: The use of discourse markers by Afrikaans-speaking preschoolers with and without specific language impairment. – *SPILPLUS* 40, 2010, 79-94 | E. ab.

349 Southwood, Frenette; Hout, Roeland van: Linguistic characteristics of SLI in Afrikaans. – *SPILPLUS* 37, 2009, 103-142.

## 9.4.2.3. LANGUAGE DISORDERS OTHER THAN DEVELOPMENTAL AND APHASIA

350 Southwood, Frenette; Schoeman, Renata; Emsley, Robin: Bilingualism and psychosis : a linguistic analysis of a patient with differential symptom severity across languages. – *SALALS* 27/2, 2009, 163-171.

## 10. SOCIOLINGUISTICS AND DIALECTOLOGY

351 Ditsèle, Thabo; Hurst, Ellen: Travelling terms and local innovations : the *tsotsitaal* of the North West province, South Africa. – *Literator* 37/2, 2016, 8 p | E. & Afrikaans ab.

352 Makalela, Leketi: Translanguaging in *kasi-taal* : rethinking old language boundaries for new language planning. – *SPILPLUS* 42, 2013, 111-125 | E. ab.

## 10.1. SOCIOLINGUISTICS

353 Anthonissen, Christine: Bilingualism and language shift in Western Cape communities. – *SPILPLUS* 38, 2009, 61-76 | E. ab.

354 Banga, Arina; Hanssen, Esther; Schreuder, Robert; Neijt, Anneke: How subtle differences in orthography influence conceptual interpretation. – *WL&L* 15/2, 2012, 185-208.

355 Bekker, Ian; Levon, Erez: The embedded indexical value of /s/-fronting in Afrikaans and South African English. – *Linguistics* 55/5, 2017, 1109-1139 | E. ab.

356 Blignaut, Joline; Lesch, Harold M.: 'n Ondersoek na die taalgebruik in *Son* as verteenwoordigend van Kaaps. – *SPILPLUS* 45, 2014, 19-41 | [Research of the language use in *Son* as representative of Kaaps] | Afrikaans ab.

357 Bock, Zannie: Cyber socialising : emerging genres and registers of intimacy among young South African students. – *LM* 44/2, 2013, 68-91 | E. ab.

358 Brookes, Heather; Lekgoro, Tshepiso: A social history of urban male youth varieties in Stirtonville and Vosloorus, South Africa. – *SALALS* 32/2, 2014, 149-159.

359 Carstens, Wannie A. M.: Die storie van Afrikaans : perspektiewe op die verlede, hede en toekoms. – *TNA* 20/1, 2013, 21-49 | The story of Afrikaans : perspectives on the past, the present and the future | E. ab.

360 Chariatte, Nadine: Language crossing in Greater Cape Town : narratives of gang assaults. – (644), 333-349 | E. ab.

361 Conradie, C. Jac; Coetzee, Anna E.: Afrikaans. – (155), 897-917 | On language variation.

362 Dyers, Charlyn: The conceptual evolution in linguistics : implications for the study of Kaaps. – *Multiling* 2/2, 2015, 55-64 | E. ab.

363 Francken, Eep: De kunst of de boodschap? : schrijvers in de Zuid-Afrikaanse taalstrijd. – (20), 203-217.

364 Glorie, Ingrid: "Allengs wordt de spruyt een boom" (I) : de Stellenbosche studentenvereniging "Ons Spreekuur" (1895-1919) en de taalkwestie. – *TNA* 17/1, 2010, 20-52 | ["Allengs wordt de spruyt een boom" [Slowly/gradually the shoot becomes a tree] (I): The Stellenbosch student society "Ons spreekuur" [Our debating hour/hour to talk] and literature (1895-1919)] | Cf. part II, 365 | E. ab.

365 Glorie, Ingrid: "Allengs wordt de spruyt een boom" (II) : de Stellenbosche studentenvereniging "Ons Spreekuur" en de literatuur (1895-1919). – *TNA* 18/1, 2011, 60-84 | ["Allengs wordt de spruyt een boom" [Slowly/gradually the shoot becomes a tree] (II) : the Stellenbosch student society "Ons spreekuur" [Our debating hour/hour to talk] and literature (1895-1919)] | Cf. part I, 364 | E. ab.

366 Grebe, Heinrich Philip: *Op die keper beskou : oor die ontstaan van Afrikaans*. – Pretoria : Van Schaik, 2012. – 167 p. – (Talatala-reeks = Talatala series ; 4).

367 Hurst, Ellen; Buthelezi, Mthuli: A visual and linguistic comparison of features of Durban and Cape Town tsotsitaal. – *SALALS* 32/2, 2014, 185-197.

368 Hurst, Ellen: Metaphor in South African tsotsitaal. – *SoLS* 10/1-2, 2016, 153-175 | E. ab.

369 Kapp, Pieter: *Maties en Afrikaans : 'n besondere verhouding, 1911-2011*. – Pretoria : Protea Boekhuis, 2013. – 261 p | [Maties and Afrikaans : a special relationship, 1911-2011] | Maties is a nickname for Stellenbosch University.

370 Kirsten, Johanita: Totius en die standaardisering van vroeg-moderne Afrikaanse werkwoorde. – *TsGw* 53/1, 2013, 60-75 | Totius and the standardisation of Early Modern Afrikaans verbs | E. & Afrikaans ab.

371 Kirsten, Johanita: What is in a language : essentialism in macro-socio-linguistic research on Afrikaans. – *IJSL* 248, 2017, 159-195 | E. ab.

372 Madell, Madelynne: Schooling superdiversity : linguistic features as linguistic resources in two Manenberg classrooms in the Western Cape. – *Multiling* 2/2, 2015, 76-85.

373 Mesthrie, Rajend; Hurst, Ellen: Slang registers, code-switching and restructured urban varieties in South Africa : an analytic overview of tsotsitaals with special reference to the Cape Town variety. – *JPCl* 28/1, 2013, 103-130.

374 Mesthrie, Rajend: "I've been speaking Tsotsitaal all my life without knowing it" : towards a unified account of Tstotsitaals in South Africa. – (49), 95-109.

375 Odendaal, Gerda: Moet Afrikaans geherstandaardiseer word? = Should Afrikaans be restandardised? – *TsGw* 54/4, 2014, 656-674 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

376 [Otto, Anna N] Otto, Annél: Sosiolinguistiek. – (165), 311-346 | [Sociolinguistics].

377 Ribbens-Klein, Yolandi: Locality, belonging and the social meanings of Afrikaans rhotic variation in the South Cape : from patterns of frequency towards moments of meaning. – *Multiling* 4/1, 2017, 7-26 | E. ab.

378 Saal, Elvis O.: To use or not to use teenage Afrikaans in HIV prevention messages directed at Afrikaans teenagers in Pretoria. – *SPILPLUS* 41, 2012, 91-105 | E. ab.

379 Simpson, Gerda: Troeteltaal in taalkundige en leksikografiese verband. – (43), 227-243 | Language of endearment in linguistic and lexicographic context | E. & Afrikaans ab.

380 Stell, Gerald: Afrikaanse spreektaalnormen en prescriptieve Afrikaanse normen : is er genoeg ruimte voor grammaticale diversiteit in het Standaardafrikaans? – *TsGw* 50/3, 2010, 418-444 | E. ab.: Afrikaans speech norms and prescriptive Afrikaans norms : is there enough scope for grammatical diversity in Standard Afrikaans? | E., Fr. & Afrikaans ab.

381 Stell, Gerald: Comparability of the black-white divide in the American speech community and the coloured-white divide in the Afrikaans speech community. – *AS* 87/3, 2012, 294-335.

382 Stell, Gerald: Ethnicity as an independent factor of language variation across space : trends in morphosyntactic patterns in spoken Afrikaans. – (14), 231-252.

383 Stell, Gerald: Grammaticale variatie in het informele gesproken Afrikaans : standaardisatie 'from above' en standaardisatie 'from below'. – (33), 109-134 | E. ab.

384 Stell, Gerald: Is there a Namibian Afrikaans? : recent trends in grammatical variation in Afrikaans varieties within and across Namibia's borders. – *SPILPLUS* 39, 2009, 85-105.

385 Velghe, Fie; Blommaert, Jan: Emergent new literacies and the mobile phone : informal language learning, voice and identity in a South African township. – (95), 89-111.

386 Velghe, Fie: 'Hallo hoe gaan dit, wat maak jy?' : phatic communication, the mobile phone and coping strategies in a South African context. – *Multiling* 2/1, 2015, 10-30 | E. ab.

387 [Versteegh, Cornelis H M] Versteegh, Kees: Islamic learning in Arabic-Afrikaans between Malay model and Ottoman reform. – *Wacana* 16/2, 2015, 284-303.

388 [Versteegh, Cornelis H M] Versteegh, Kees: A remarkable document in Arabic-Afrikaans : the election pamphlet of 1884. – (3), 365-380.

389 Wal, Marijke J. van der: Standaardtaalen in beweging : standaardisatie en destandaardisatie in Nederland, Vlaanderen en Zuid-Afrika. – (33), 11-26 | E. ab.

390 Williams, Quentin Emmanuel: The enregisterment of English in rap braggadocio : a study from English-Afrikaans bilingualism in Cape Town. – *ET* 28/2, 2012, 54-59.

391 Williams, Quentin Emmanuel; Stroud, Christopher: Multilingualism remixed : sampling, braggadocio and the stylisation of local voice. – *AfrS* 73/1, 2014, 124-145.

#### 10.1.1. LANGUAGE ATTITUDES AND SOCIAL IDENTITY

392 Anthonissen, Christine: *'With English the world is more open to you'* : language shift as marker of social transformation. – *ET* 29/1, 2013, 28-35 | On South African attitudes to English and Afrikaans.

393 Beukes, Anne-Marie; Pienaar, Marné: Identities in extended Afrikaans speech communities. – *NJAS* 23/3, 2014, 120-139 | Electronic publ.

394 Bock, Zannie: Code-switching : an appraisal resource in TCR testimonies. – *FL* 18/2, 2011, 183-209 | TCR = truth and reconciliation commission.

395 Bornman, Elirea; Pauw, J. C.; Potgieter, Petrus H.: Houdings en opinies oor moedertaalonderrig en die keuse van 'n universiteit : Afrikaanssprekende studente aan Unisa = Attitudes and opinions regarding mother-tongue education and the choice of a university : Afrikaans-speaking students at Unisa. – *TsGw* 54/4, 2014, 596-609 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

396 Bornman, Elirea; Pauw, J. C.; Potgieter, Petrus H.; Janse van Vuuren, Hermanus H.: Moedertaalonderrig, moedertaalleer en identiteit : redes vir en probleme met die keuse van Afrikaans as onderrigtaal. – *TsGw* 57/3, 2017, 724-746 | Mother-tongue education, mother-tongue learning and identity : reasons for and problems with choosing Afrikaans as the language of teaching | E. & Afrikaans ab.

397 Bornman, Elirea; Potgieter, Petrus H.; Pauw, J. C.: Taalkeuses en -opinies van Afrikaanssprekende studente aan Unisa. – *TsGw* 53/3, 2013, 361-376 | Language choices and opinions of Afrikaans-speaking students at Unisa | E. & Afrikaans ab.

398 Brookes, Heather: Urban youth languages in South Africa : a case study of Tsotsitaal in a South African township. – *AnL* 56/3-4, 2014, 356-388.

399 Cage, Ken: *Gayle : the language of kings and queens : a history and dictionary of gay language in South Africa*. – Houghton : Jacana, 2003. – 108 p.

400 Coetzee-Van Rooy, Susan: Multilingualism and social cohesion : insights from South African students (1998, 2010, 2015). – *IJSL* 242, 2016, 239-265 | E. ab.

401 Deumert, Ana: Creole as necessity? Creole as choice? : evidence from Afrikaans historical sociolinguistics. – (50), 101-122 | E. ab.

402 Deumert, Ana: The performance of a ludic self on social network(ing) sites. – (106), 23-45.

403 Hatoss, Anikó; Rensburg, Henriette van; Starks, Donna: Finding one's own linguistic space : views on English, Afrikaans and identity in a semi-urban Australian context. – *SoLS* 5/2, 2011 (2012), 257-289.

404 Horáková, Hana: Contested language : nuwe Afrikaanse beweging in a new South Africa. – (35), 183-202.

405 Hurst, Ellen; Mesthrie, Rajend: 'When you hang out with the guys they keep you in style' : the case for considering style in descriptions of South African tsotsitaals. – *LM* 44/1, 2013, 3-20 | E. ab.

406 Kassiem, Gava: Translation and identity : translation of the Freedom Charter into Afrikaans as a case in point. – *SALALS* 35/3, 2017, 271-284 | E. ab.

407 Kotzé, Ian; Kirsten, Johanita: The heritage of a language : discourses of purism in Afrikaans historical linguistics. – *LM* 47/3, 2016, 349-371 | E. ab.

408 Le Cordeur, Michael: Die variëteite van Afrikaans as draers van identiteit : 'n sosiokulturele perspektief. – *TsGw* 51/4, 2011, 758-777 | The varieties of Afrikaans as carriers of identity : a socio-cultural perspective | E. & Afr. ab.

409 Maribe, Tebogo; Brookes, Heather: Male youth talk in the construction of black lesbian identities. – *SALALS* 32/2, 2014, 199-214.

410 Maritz, Anna P.: Black Afrikaans : an alternative use. – *Literator* 37/2, 2016, 12 p | E. & Afrikaans ab.

411 Martin, Willy: De status van het Afrikaans in Zuid-Afrika en in de Nederlandssprekende landen. – *TNA* 21/2, 2014, 95-137 | The status of Afrikaans in South Africa and in the Dutch-speaking countries | E. ab.

412 Rooy, Bertus van; Doel, Rias van den: Dutch and Afrikaans as post-pluricentric languages. – *IJSL* 212, 2011, 1-22.

413 Saal, Elvis O.: Teenagers' perceptions of SMS Afrikaans in print advertisements. – *SALALS* 33/1, 2015, 1-19.

414 Senekal, Burgert: Eentaligheid, integrasie en assosiasiegerigheid in sosiale netwerke : 'n literatuuroorsig = Monolingualism, integration and assortative mixing in social networks : a literature review. – *TsGw* 55/3, 2015, 356-372 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

415 Shaikjee, Mooniq; Milani, Tommaso M.: 'It's time for Afrikaans to go' ... or not? Language ideologies and (ir)rationality in the blogosphere. – *LM* 44/2, 2013, 92-116 | E. ab.

416 Stell, Gerald; Beyer, Herman L.: Interethnic relations and language variation : language use and identity negotiation among Namibian Coloureds and Whites in interactional settings. – *SPIL* 41, 2012, 115-139 | E. ab.

417 Stell, Gerald: *Ethnicity and language variation : grammar and code-switching in the Afrikaans speech community*. – Frankfurt am Main : Lang, 2011. – 297 p. – (Schriften zur Afrikanistik = Research in African studies ; 19).

418 Stell, Gerald: Ethnicity in linguistic variation : white and coloured identities in Afrikaans-English code-switching. – *Pragmatics* 20/3, 2010, 425-447.

419 Stell, Gerald; Groenewald, Gerald: 'n Perseptuele verslag van Afrikaans in Namibië : tussen lingua franca en sosiaal-ekslusiewe taal. – *TsGw* 56/4-2, 2016, 1128-1148 | A perceptual account of Afrikaans in Namibia : between lingua franca and socially exclusive language | E. & Afrikaans ab.

420 Stroud, Christopher: Linguistic citizenship as utopia. – *Multiling* 2/2, 2015, 20-37 | Includes a case study of Kaaps.

421 Thutloa, Alfred Mautsane; Huddlestone, Kate: Afrikaans as an index of identity among Western Cape Coloured communities. – *SPIL* 40, 2011, 57-73 | E. ab.

#### 10.1.2. LANGUAGE POLICY AND LANGUAGE PLANNING

422 Alberts, Mariëtta: Die ontwikkeling van Afrikaanse vaktaal : verlede, hede en toekoms. – *TsGw* 56/2-1, 2016, 314-334 | The development of Afrikaans technical language : past, present and future | E. & Afrikaans ab.

423 Alberts, Mariëtta: Prolingua se bydrae tot terminologieontwikkeling in Afrikaans. – *Lexikos* 27, 2017, 16-49 | Prolingua's contribution to terminology development in Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab.

424 Alberts, Mariëtta: Terminology development at tertiary institutions : a South African perspective. – *Lexikos* 24, 2014, 1-26 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

425 Carstens, Wannie A. M.: Normatiewe taalkunde. – (165), 347-372 | [Normative linguistics].

426 Coller, Hennie P. van: Perspektiewe op Afrikaans as 'n taal vir universiteite. – *TsGw* 56/4-1, 2016, 998-1015 | Perspectives on Afrikaans as a university language | E. & Afrikaans ab.

427 Conradie, C. Jac: Het Nederlands en de standaardisering van het Afrikaanse werkwoordssysteem. – (33), 67-84 | E. ab.

428 Cornelius, Eleanor: An appraisal of plain language in the South African banking sector. – *SPIL* 46, 2016, 25-50 | E. ab.

429 Ferreira, Dina; Plessis, Theo du: Terminologiebestuur in Suid-Afrika : 'n ideaalmodel. – *Lexikos* 20, 2010, 621-643 | E. ab.: Terminology management in South Africa : an ideal model | E. & Afrikaans ab.

430 Giliomee, Hermann: Die troebel toekoms van die Afrikaners en Afrikaans = The current troubled state of the Afrikaners and Afrikaans. – *TsGw* 54/4, 2014, 571-595 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

431 Haron, Muhammed: Revisiting *al-Qawl al-matīn* : a sociolinguistically engineered Arabic-Afrikaans text. – (3), 343-364.

432 Kotzé, Ernst F.: Afrikaans as besitting, en die vraagstuk van herstandaardisering = Afrikaans as property, and the question of restandardisation. – *TsGw* 54/4, 2014, 635-655 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

433 Kotzé, Ernst F.: Destandaardisasie en herstandardisasie : gelyklopende prosesse in die nuwe Suid-Afrika? – (33), 153-171 | E. ab.

434 Le Cordeur, Michael: Die kwessie van Kaaps : Afrikaansonderrig op skool benodig 'n meer inklusiewe benadering = The issue of Kaaps : Afrikaans teaching at school needs a more inclusive approach. – *TsGw* 55/4, 2015, 712-728 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

435 *Mainstreaming Afrikaans : regional varieties* / Ed. by Kwesi Kwaa Prah. – Cape Town : CASAS, 2012. – 155 p. – (CASAS book series ; 89) | Papers from the symposium "Mainstreaming Afrikaans regional varieties" held at the South African Centre for the Netherlands and Flanders, 24-25 January 2011 | Cf. Afrikaans version 451.

436 McLachlan, J. D. (Tom): Standaardafrkaans, standaardspelling en die AWS. – *TsGw* 56/2-1, 2016, 477-501 | Standard Afrikaans, standard spelling and the Afrikaans word list and spelling rules (AWS) | E. & Afrikaans ab.

437 Mwepu, Dominique Ngoy: Government's contribution to the development of translation in South Africa (1910-1977). – *SALALS* 26/1, 2008, 87-96.

438 Ngwenya, Themba Lancelot: The North-West University language policy : a glimmer of hope and flashes of red lights. – *LM* 43/2, 2012, 221-239 | E. ab.

439 Noordegraaf, Jan: De bril van de taalkundige : taalbeschouwing als overdracht van culturele waarden. – (33), 49-66 | E. ab.

440 Orman, Jon: Language policy and identity conflict in relation to Afrikaans in the post-apartheid era. – (116), 59-76.

441 Orman, Jon: *Language policy and nation-building in post-apartheid South Africa*. – *LPol* – Dordrecht : Springer, 2008. – xii, 204 p. – (*LPol*; 10).

442 Pienaar, Marné: A decline in language rights violation complaints received by PanSALB : the case of Afrikaans. – *SPIL* 38, 2008, 125-137 | PanSALB = Pan South African language board.

443 Plessis, Theodorus du: Taalbeleidshersiening aan die Universiteit van die Vrystaat, 2003–2015. – *TsGw* 56/4-1, 2016, 1048-1070 | The revision of language policy at the University of the Free State, 2003–2015 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

444 Plessis, Theodorus du: Taalbeleidshersiening en die ontplanning van Afrikaans aan die Universiteit van die Vrystaat. – *SPILPLUS* 53, 2017, 78-96 | Language policy review and the unplanning of Afrikaans at the University of the Free State | E. & Afrikaans ab.

445 Rensburg, Christo van: Ná honderd jaar : die Afrikaans van die eerste taalkommissie. – *TsGw* 57/2-1, 2017, 249-270 | After a hundred years : the Afrikaans of the first Language Commission | E. & Afrikaans ab.

446 Rensburg, Christo van: Die slag toe slim sy baas gevang het. – *SPIL* 48, 2017, 51-66 | The day when the clever arguments misfired | E. ab | On the history of the standardization of Afrikaans.

447 Stell, Gerald: Metropolitan standards and post-colonial standards : what future for the Dutch connection of Afrikaans? – (11), 115-130.

448 Steyn, J. C.: G. R. von Wielligh en die Afrikaanse taalbeweging. – *TNA* 16/2, 2009, 68-91 | [G. R. von Wielligh and the Afrikaans language movement] | E. ab.

449 Steyn, J. C.: N. P. van Wyk Louw se opvattinge oor taalbewegings en die behoud van Afrikaans. – *TsGw* 56/2-1, 2016, 335-354 | N. P. van Wyk Louw's views on language movements and the maintenance of Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab.

450 Steyn, J. C.: Nederlandstaliges se bydraes tot die behoud en erkenning van Afrikaans 1870-1920 = Dutch language speakers' contributions to the maintenance and recognition of Afrikaans 1870-1920. – *TsGw* 54/3, 2014, 425-445 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

451 *Veelkantiger Afrikaans : streeksvariëteite in die standaardvorming* / Redakteur Kwesi Kwaai Prah. – Cape Town : CASAS, 2012. – 156 p. – (CASAS book series; 88) | Papers from the symposium “Mainstreaming Afrikaans regional varieties” held at the South African Centre for the Netherlands and Flanders, 24-25 January 2011 | Cf. English version 435.

452 Waal, C. S. van der: Creolisation and purity : Afrikaans language politics in post-apartheid times. – *AfrS* 71/3, 2012, 446-463.

453 Walt, Hannes van der; Steyn, Hennie: Afrikaans as taal van onderrig en leer in skole en ander onderwysinstansies : "ou" wyn in nuwe sakke. – *TsGw* 56/4-1, 2016, 1034-1047 | Afrikaans as language of teaching and learning in schools : a "new" approach to an "old" problem | E. & Afrikaans ab.

454 Walt, Johannes L. van der; Wolhuter, Charl C.: Eerste taal as onderrigmedium in hoër onderwys : 'n internasionale perspektief. – *TsGw* 56/4-1, 2016, 1016-1033 | First language as medium of instruction in higher education : an international perspective | E. & Afrikaans ab.

455 [Webb, Victor] Webb, Vic: Managing multilingualism in higher education in post-1994 South Africa. – *LM* 43/2, 2012, 202-220 | E. ab.

456 [Webb, Victor] Webb, Vic: Standaardafrkaans : 'n vurk in die pad? : 'n taalpolitiese perspektief. – (33), 193-214 | E. ab.

457 Williams, Michellene; Bekker, Simon: Language policy and speech practice in Cape Town : an exploratory public health sector study. – *SALALS* 26/1, 2008, 171-183 | On Afrikaans, Xhosa & English.

#### 10.1.3. LANGUAGE FOR SPECIAL PURPOSES

458 Conradie, Marthinus; Niekerk, Angelique van: The use of linguistic tokenism to secure brand loyalty : code-switching practices in South African print advertising. – *LM* 46/1, 2015, 117-138 | E. ab.

459 Plessis, Lourens du: Die wonder van grondwetmatige Afrikaans. – *TsGw* 52/3, 2012, 337-351 | The wonder of constitutionalist Afrikaans.

#### 10.1.4. LANGUAGE LOSS AND MAINTENANCE

460 Barkhuizen, Gary P.: Maintenance, identity and social inclusion narratives of an Afrikaans speaker living in New Zealand. – *IJSL* 222, 2013, 77-100.

461 Dyers, Charlyn: Language shift or maintenance? : factors determining the use of Afrikaans among some township youth in South Africa. – *SPIL* 38, 2008, 49-72.

462 *Globalization and language vitality : perspectives from Africa* / Ed. by Cécile B. Vigouroux ; Salikoko S. Mufwene. – London : Continuum, 2008. – 272 p.

463 *Halala Afrikaans* / Daniel Hugo redakteur ; Roof Bezuidenhout ; et al. – Pretoria : Protea Boekhuis, 2009. – 175 p.

464 Pretorius, Laurette: Die rol van die Afrikaanse Wikipedia in die uitbou van Afrikaans. – *TsGw* 56/2-1, 2016, 371-390 | The role of the Afrikaans Wikipedia in the growth of Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab.

#### 10.2. MULTILINGUALISM, LANGUAGE CONTACT

465 Stroud, Christopher; Mpundukana, Sibonile: Towards a material ethnography of linguistic landscape : multilingualism, mobility and space in a South African township. – *JSocL* 13/3, 2009, 363-386.

##### 10.2.1. MULTILINGUALISM

466 Carstens, Wannie A. M.: Meertaligheid en Afrikaans in Suid-Afrika : die stand van sake. – *IN* 55/3, 2017, 191-207 | [Multilingualism and Afrikaans in South Africa : the state of affairs].

467 Coetzee-Van Rooy, Susan: Afrikaans in contact with English : endangered language or case of exceptional bilingualism? – *IJSL* 224, 2013, 179-207.

468 Coetzee-Van Rooy, Susan: Explaining the ordinary magic of stable African multilingualism in the Vaal Triangle region in South Africa. – *JMMD* 35/2, 2014, 121-138.

469 Engelbrecht, Alta: Reading between the lines : hegemonic favouring within language-related communities. – *SALALS* 35/1, 2017, 105-120 | On Flemish and Afrikaans speech communities | E. ab.

470 Gass, Kate M. van: Language contact in computer-mediated communication : Afrikaans-English code switching on internet relay chat (IRC). – *SALALS* 26/4, 2008, 429-444.

471 Hill, Lloyd B.: The decline of academic bilingualism in South Africa : a case study. – *LPol* 8/4, 2009, 327-349.

472 Keymeulen, Jacques Van: Standaardisatie en destandaardisatie bij Vlamingen en Afrikaners : parallellen en verschillen. – (33), 135-152 | E. ab.

473 Nel, Joanine; Huddlestone, Kate: Analysing Afrikaans-English bilingual children's conversational code switching. – *SPIL* 41, 2012, 29-53 | E. ab.

474 Stell, Gerald: Codeswitching and ethnicity : grammatical types of codeswitching in the Afrikaans speech community. – *IJSL* 199, 2009, 103-128.

475 Stell, Gerald: Trends in linguistic diversity in post-independence Windhoek : a qualitative appraisal. – *LM* 47/3, 2016, 326-348 | E. ab.

476 Williams, Quentin Emmanuel: Youth multilingualism in South Africa's hip-hop culture : a metapragmatic analysis. – *SoLS* 10/1-2, 2016, 109-133 | E. ab.

#### 10.2.3. LANGUAGE CONTACT

477 Bredenkamp, Francois: Greek and Afrikaans : the shallowest of influencing. – (150), 255-268.

478 Duke, Janet: Gender reduction and loss in Germanic: the Scandinavian, Dutch, and Afrikaans case studies. – *GermL* 206-209, 2010, 643-672.

479 McLachlan, J. D. (Tom): Die dierbare Engels. – *TsGw* 56/2-2, 2016, 725-726 | [That precious English language] | On anglicisms in Afrikaans.

480 Rensburg, Christo van: 'n Perspektief op 'n periode van kontak tussen Khoi en Afrikaans. – *Literator* 34/2, 2013, 11 p | A perspective on a period of contact between Khoi and Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab.

481 Willemyns, Roland: *Dutch : biography of a language*. – Oxford : Oxford UP, 2013. – xviii, 289 p.

#### 10.4. DIALECTOLOGY

482 [Breed, Adri] Breed, Catharina Adriana; Aardt, Caro A van: Postulêre werkwoorde in Griekwa-Afrikaans : 'n ondersoek vanuit 'n grammatiseringsperspektief. – *SPIL* 46, 2016, 1-24 | [Postural verbs in Griekwa-Afrikaans : an investigation from a grammaticalization perspective] | E. & Afrikaans ab.

483 Canepari, Luciano; Cerini, Marco: *Dutch & Afrikaans pronunciation & accents : geo-social applications of the natural phonetics & tonetics method*. – München : LINCOM GmbH, 2016. – 222 p. – (LINCOM studies in phonetics ; 10) | First edition cf. 484.

484 Canepari, Luciano; Cerini, Marco: *Dutch & Afrikaans pronunciation & accents : geo-social applications of the natural phonetics & tonetics method*. – München : LINCOM Europa, 2013. – 212 p. – (LINCOM studies in phonetics ; 10).

##### 10.4.1. DIALECTAL LEXICON

485 Prinsloo, Anton F.: *Annerlike Afrikaans : woordeboek van Afrikaanse kontreitaal*. – Pretoria : Protea Boekhuis, 2009. – 536 p.

## 11. COMPARATIVE LINGUISTICS

486 Heeringa, Wilbert; Wet, Febe de; Huyssteen, Gerhard B. van: Afrikaans and Dutch as closely-related languages : a comparison to West Germanic languages and Dutch dialects. – *SPILPLUS* 47, 2015, 1-18 | E. ab.

487 Lenz, Alexandra N.: On the resultative-modal grammaticalisation pathway of German GET verbs : with an outlook on Dutch and Afrikaans. – *Tet* 67/2, 2015, 177-209 | E. ab.

488 Olmen, Daniël van; Breed, Adri: Afrikaans as Standaard Gemiddelde Europees : wanneer 'n lid uit sy taalarea beweeg. – *SALALS* 33/2, 2015, 227-246 | Afrikaans & E. ab.: Afrikaans as Standard Average European : when a member leaves its language area.

## 11.1. HISTORICAL LINGUISTICS AND LANGUAGE CHANGE

489 Besten, Hans den: Desiderata for Afrikaans historical linguistics. – (509), 355-374 | First publ. in Dutch, cf. 163.

490 Besten, Hans den: From Khoekhoe foreigner talk via Hottentot Dutch to Afrikaans : the creation of a novel grammar. – (509), 257-287 | First publ. in 1989.

491 Biberauer, Theresa: Competing reinforcements : when languages opt out of Jespersen's cycle. – (14), 3-30 | On Afrikaans & Brazilian Portuguese.

492 Biberauer, Theresa: Jespersen off course? : the case of contemporary Afrikaans negation. – (8), 91-130.

493 Biberauer, Theresa: *Nie sommer nie* : sociohistorical and formal comparative considerations in the rise and maintenance of the modern Afrikaans negation system. – *SPILPLUS* 47, 2015, 129-174 | E. ab.

494 Carstens, Wannie A. M.; Raidt, Edith H.: *Die storie van Afrikaans uit Europa en van Afrika*. Deel 1. *Die Europese geskiedenis van Afrikaans* – Pretoria : Protea Boekhuis, 2017. – 639 p | [The story of Afrikaans from Europe and from Africa. Vol. 1. The European history of Afrikaans].

495 Coetzee, Andries W.: Grammatical change through lexical accumulation : voicing cooccurrence restrictions in Afrikaans. – *Language* 90/3, 2014, 693-721.

496 Conradie, C. Jac: Afrikaans en die 17de-eeuse briewe uit die see. – *TNA* 22/1, 2015, 3-22 | Afrikaans and 17th century letters from the sea | E. ab.

497 Conradie, C. Jac: The Dutch-Afrikaans participial prefix *ge-* : a case of degrammaticalization? – (14), 131-153.

498 Conradie, C. Jac; Groenewald, Gerald: Die ontstaan en vestiging van Afrikaans. – (165), 27-60 | [The origin and establishment of Afrikaans].

499 Conradie, C. Jac: Taalverandering in Afrikaans. – (165), 61-89 | [Language change in Afrikaans].

500 Conradie, C. Jac: Waar zijn de Afrikaanse mutatieverbs gebleven? – *AUW* 3619, *NeerlW* 24, 2014, 153-162 | [What happened to the Afrikaans mutative verbs?] | E. ab.

501 Davids, Achmat: *The Afrikaans of the Cape muslims : from 1815 to 1915* / Ed. by Hein Willemse and Suleman E. Dangor. – Pretoria : Protea Boekhuis, 2011. – 318 p. – (Talatala-reeks = Talatala series ; 3).

502 Harbert, Wayne E.: Contrastive linguistics and language change : reanalysis in Germanic relative clauses. – *LiC* 12/1, 2012, 27-46.

503 Kirsten, Johanita: Frequency effects and structural change : the Afrikaans preterite. – *SPIL* 45, 2016, 147-168 | E. ab.

504 Kirsten, Johanita: *Grammaticale veranderinge in Afrikaans van 1911 tot 2010*. – Vaaldriehoek : Noordwes Universiteit, 2016. – xvii, 314 p. | [Grammatical changes in Afrikaans from 1911 to 2010] | Afrikaans ab. p. iv-v | E. ab. p. vi-vii | Diss. at the North-West University, February 2016.

505 *Ons kom van vêr : bydraes oor bruin Afrikaanssprekendes se rol in die ontwikkeling van Afrikaans* / Redakteurs: W. A. M. Carstens & Michael le Cordeur. – [South Africa] : Naledi, 2016. – xxi, 599 p. | [We come a long way : contributions to the role of coloured Afrikaans speakers in the development of Afrikaans].

506 [Rensburg, Christo van] Rensburg, MCJ van: Khoi en Oosgrensafrikaans. – *SPILPLUS* 47, 2015, 75-97 | Khoi and Eastern border Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab.

507 Rensburg, Christo van: *So kry ons Afrikaans*. – Pretoria : Lapa, 2012. – 159 p.

508 Rensburg, Christo van: Die vroegste Khoi-Afrikaans. – *TsGw* 56/2-1, 2016, 454-476 | The earliest Khoi Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab.

509 *Roots of Afrikaans : selected writings of Hans den Besten[1948-2010]* / Ed. by Ton van der Wouden. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2012. – vii, 458 p. – (Creole language library ; 44) | Posthumous publ. of articles, some publ. earlier, with additional papers by other authors.

## 12.2. STATISTICAL AND QUANTITATIVE LINGUISTICS

510 Jansen, Carel; Richards, Rose; Zyl, Liezl van: Evaluating four readability formulas for Afrikaans. – *SPILPLUS* 53, 2017, 149-166 | E. ab.

## 12.2.1. CORPUS LINGUISTICS

511 Geleyn, Tim; Colleman, Timothy: De progressieve constructies *bezig zijn* en *besig wees* : een contrastief corpusonderzoek Nederlands - Afrikaans = Progressive constructions with *bezig/besig* ("busy") in Dutch and Afrikaans : a contrastive corpus study. – *TsGw* 54/1, 2014, 56-74 | E., Du. & Afrikaans ab.

512 Pilon, Suléne: 'n Woordsoortetiketteerde vir Afrikaans. – *SALALS* 26/1, 2008, 119-134 | A part-of-speech tagger for Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab, E. conclusion.

513 Prinsloo, D. J.: A perspective on the lexicographic value of mega newspaper corpora. – *Lexikos* 19, 2009, 225-241.

514 Puttkammer, M. J.: *Efficient development of human language technology resources for resource-scarce languages*. – Potchefstroom : North-West University, 2014. – [10], 151 p | E. & Afrikaans ab | Diss. at the North-West University, September 2014.

## 12.3. COMPUTATIONAL LINGUISTICS

515 Groenewald, H. J.; Huyssteen, Gerhard B. van: Outomatiese lemma-identifisering vir Afrikaans. – *Literator* 29/1, 2008, 65-91 | Automatic lemmatisation for Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab.

516 Huyssteen, Gerhard B. van; Verhoeven, Ben: A taxonomy for Afrikaans and Dutch compounds. – (27), 31-40 | E. ab.

517 Kotzé, Gideon R.: Ontwikkeling van 'n Afrikaanse woordnet : metodologie en integrasie. – *Literator* 29/1, 2008, 163-184 | Development of an Afrikaans wordnet : methodology and integration | E. & Afrikaans ab.

518 Matthew, Gordon: Using technology recycling to develop a named entity recogniser for Afrikaans. – *SALALS* 33/2, 2015, 199-216.

519 Pilon, Suléne: Die ontwikkeling van 'n fleksievormgenereerde vir Afrikaans. – *Literator* 29/1, 2008, 93-110 | The development of an inflected form generator for Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab.

520 Pilon, Suléne; Puttkammer, M. J.; Huyssteen, Gerhard B. van: Die ontwikkeling van 'n woordafbreker en kompositumanaliseerde vir Afrikaans. – *Literator* 29/1, 2008, 21-41 | The development of a hyphenator and compound analyser for Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab.

521 Snijman, Dirk; Huyssteen, Gerhard B. van; Daelemans, Walter: Outomatiese genreklassifikasie vir Afrikaans. 33/1, 2014, 12 p. | Automatic genre classification for Afrikaans | E. & Afrikaans ab.

## 14.3.5. English

522 *Communities of practice in the history of English* / Ed. by Joanna Kopaczyk ; Andreas H. Jucker. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2013. – vii, 291 p. – (Pragmatics & beyond. N.S. ; 235).

523 *Corpus linguistics on the move : exploring and understanding English through corpora* / Edited by María José López-Couso, Belén Méndez-Naya, Paloma Núñez-Pertejo, and Ignacio M. Palacios-Martínez. – Leiden; Boston : Brill Rodopi, 2016. – xxii, 368 p. – (Language and computers. Studies in digital linguistics ; 79).

524 *The Oxford handbook of the history of English* / Ed. by Terttu Nevalainen and Elizabeth Closs Traugott. – Oxford : Oxford UP, 2012. – xxxix, 942 p. – (Oxford handbooks in linguistics).

## 14.3.5.4. Modern English

## 1. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

525 Brozbă, Gabriela: On the variability of vocalic inventory in Black South African English. – (139), 45-60, fig | E. ab.

## 1. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

526 Bekker, Ian: Nursing the cure : a phonetic analysis of /ʊə/ in South African English. – *SPILPLUS* 42, 2013, 1-39 | E. ab.

527 Bekker, Ian: The weak vowels of South African English : a critical review and comparative acoustic analysis. – *SALALS* 32/1, 2014, 133-147.

528 Mesthrie, Rajend: Deracialising the GOOSE vowel in South African English : accelerated linguistic change amongst young, middle class females in post-apartheid South Africa. – (36), 3-18.

529 O'Grady, Cathleen; Bekker, Ian: Dentalisation as regional indicator in General South African English : an acoustic analysis of /z/, /d/ and /t/. – *SALALS* 29/1, 2011, 77-88.

530 Zerbian, Sabine: Prosodic marking of narrow focus across varieties of South African English. – *EW* 34/1, 2013, 26-47.

## 1.2. PHONOLOGY

531 Bekker, Ian: The KIT-split in South African English : a critical review. – *SALALS* 32/1, 2014, 113-131.

532 Mesthrie, Rajend: Socio-phonetics and social change : deracialisation of the GOOSE vowel in South African English. – *JSocL* 14/1, 2010, 3-33.

#### 1.2.1. SUPRASEGMENTAL PHONOLOGY (PROSODY)

533 Swerts, Marc; Zerbian, Sabine: Intonational differences between L<sub>1</sub> and L<sub>2</sub> English in South Africa. – *Phonetica* 67/3, 2010, 127-146 | L<sub>2</sub> speakers of English have Zulu as L<sub>1</sub>.

534 Zerbian, Sabine: Perception and interpretation of intonational prominence in varieties of South African English. – (19), 335-348.

#### 2. GRAMMAR, MORPHOSYNTAX

535 *Re-assessing the present perfect* / Ed. by Valentin Werner ; Elena Seoane ; Cristina Suárez-Gómez. – Berlin : De Gruyter Mouton, 2016. – ix, 353 p. – (Topics in English linguistics ; 91).

#### 2.2. SYNTAX

536 Botha, Yolande: Corpus evidence of anti-deletion in Black South African English noun phrases. – *ET* 29/1, 2013, 16-21.

537 [Merwe, Christian H J van der] Merwe, Christo H. J. van der: Left Dislocation and its translation in some Germanic languages. – *SPIPLUS* 50, 2016, 159-184 | E. ab.

538 Mesthrie, Rajend: Deletions, antideletions and complexity theory, with special reference to Black South African and Singaporean Englishes. – (17), 90-100.

539 Vos, Mark de: Atomic homogeneity : a semantic strategy for the determination of plurality in the complex noun phrases of South African English. – *SALALS* 32/1, 2014, 1-19.

540 Zerbian, Sabine: Syntactic and prosodic focus marking in contact varieties of South African English. – *EWW* 36/2, 2015, 228-258.

#### 3.2. LEXICOGRAPHY

541 Mesthrie, Rajend: *A dictionary of South African Indian English*. – Cape Town : UCT Press, 2010. – xxviii, 260 p.

542 Otlogetswe, Thapelo Joseph; Ramaeba, Goabilwe: Developing a campus slang dictionary for the University of Botswana. – *Lexikos* 24, 2014, 350-361 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

## 3.2.1. MONOLINGUAL LEXICOGRAPHY

543 Hicks, Sheila: Firming up the foundations : reflections on verifying the quotations in a historical dictionary, with reference to *A dictionary of South African English on historical principles*. – *Lexikos* 20, 2010, 248-271 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

544 Hiles, Lorna: Towards a Southern African English defining vocabulary. – *Lexikos* 24, 2014, 178-185 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

545 Mesthrie, Rajend: Where does a New English dictionary stop? : on the making of the *Dictionary of South African Indian English*. – *ET* 29/1, 2013, 36-43.

546 Plessis, André du; Niekerk, Tim van: Adapting a historical dictionary for the modern online user : the case of the *Dictionary of South African English on historical principles*'s presentation and navigation features. – *Lexikos* 26, 2016, 82-102 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

## 3.3. ETYMOLOGY

547 Scott-Macnab, David: The treatment of *assagai* and *zagaie* by the *OED*, and of *assegai* by the *Dictionary of South African English*. – *Nph* 96/1, 2012, 151-163.

## 4.1.1. LEXICAL SEMANTICS

548 Callies, Marcus: Widening the goalposts of cognitive metaphor research. – (63), 57-81 | On sports metaphors in varieties of English.

549 Malan, Saskia: Conceptual metaphors in South African political speeches (1994-2001). – *SPIL* 38, 2008, 73-106.

## 4.1.2. GRAMMATICAL SEMANTICS

550 Rooy, Bertus van; Piotrowska, Caroline: The development of an extended time period meaning of the progressive in Black South African English. – (626), 465-483.

551 Rooy, Bertus van; Wasserman, Ronel: Do the modals of Black and White South African English converge? – *JEL* 42/1, 2014, 51-67.

552 Wasserman, Ronel; Rooy, Bertus van: The development of modals of obligation and necessity in White South African English through contact with Afrikaans. – *JEL* 42/1, 2014, 31-50.

## 4.2. PRAGMATICS, DISCOURSE ANALYSIS AND TEXT GRAMMAR

553 Adendorff, Ralph D.; Pienaar, Kiran: 'Busty babes and passionate pleasures' : a systemic functional linguistic analysis of sex worker discourse in a South African city. – (88), 31-54.

554 Huddlestone, Kate; Fairhurst, Melanie: The pragmatic markers *anyway*, *okay*, and *shame* : a South African English corpus study. – *SPLPLUS* 42, 2013, 93-110 | E. ab.

555 Senkbeil, Karsten: Figurative language in intercultural communication : a case study of German-Southern African international academic discourse. – *IPRG* 14/4, 2017, 465-491 | E. ab.

556 Siebörger, Ian; Adendorff, Ralph D.: Newspaper literacy and communication for democracy : is there a crisis in South African journalism? – *SALALS* 27/4, 2009, 413-438.

557 Siebörger, Ian; Adendorff, Ralph D.: We're talking about semantics here : axiological condensation in the South African parliament. – *FL* 24/2, 2017, 196-233 | E. ab.

558 Włodarczyk, Matylda: Infinitives in the 1820 Settler letters of denunciation : what can a contextualised application of corpus-based results tell us about the expression of persuasion? – *PSiCL* 46/4, 2010, 533-564.

559 Włodarczyk, Matylda: 1820 settler petitions in the Cape Colony : genre dynamics and materiality. – *JHP* 14/1, 2013, 45-69.

## 9.2.2.1. PSYCHOLOGY OF READING

560 Pretorius, Elizabeth J.; Spaull, Nic: Exploring relationships between oral reading fluency and reading comprehension amongst English second language readers in South Africa. – *RaW* 29/7, 2016, 1449-1471 | E. ab.

## 9.2.3. MEMORY

561 Cockcroft, Kate; Alloway, Tracy: Phonological awareness and working memory : comparisons between South African and British children. – *SALALS* 30/1, 2012, 13-24 | An experiment with L1 English-speaking

children, and bilingual children speaking a Sotho or Nguni lg. and English.

### 9.3. LANGUAGE ACQUISITION

562 Bylund, Emanuel; Athanasopoulos, Panos: Motion event categorisation in a nativised variety of South African English. – *IJBEB* 18/5, 2015, 588-601 | E. ab.

563 *Universal or diverse paths to English phonology* / Ed. by Ulrike Gut ; Robert Fuchs ; Eva-Maria Wunder. – Berlin : De Gruyter Mouton, 2015. – v. 250 p. – (Topics in English linguistics ; 86).

#### 9.3.1.2. FIRST LANGUAGE ACQUISITION BY SCHOOL CHILDREN

564 Willenberg, Ingrid: 'Once upon a time in Bearland' : longitudinal development of fictional narratives in South African children. – *FLang* 37/2, 2017, 150-167 | E. ab.

#### 9.3.2. SECOND LANGUAGE ACQUISITION

565 Scheepers, Ruth: South African students' use of delexical multiword units : the trouble with high-frequency verbs. – *SPIL* 47, 2017, 89-114 | E. ab.

566 Zonneveld, Wim: Default, non-default, markedness and complexity in the L2 English word stress competence of L1 speakers of Setswana. – *SALALS* 28/4, 2010, 375-391 | On English, Afrikaans & Setswana.

#### 9.3.2.2. GUIDED SECOND LANGUAGE ACQUISITION

567 Partridge, Maristi: A comparison of lexical specificity in the communication verbs of L1 English and TE student writing. – *SALALS* 29/2, 2011, 135-147.

## 10. SOCIOLINGUISTICS AND DIALECTOLOGY

568 Biberauer, Theresa; Heukelum, Marie-Louise van; Duke, Lalia: *Ja-nee. No, I'm fine* : a note on YES and NO in South Africa. – *SPIL* 48, 2017, 67-86 | E. ab.

569 Elsness, Johan: English in South Africa : the case of past-referring verb forms. – (523), 181-203 | E. ab.

570 *The evolution of Englishes : the dynamic model and beyond* / Ed. by Sarah Buschfeld ; Thomas Hoffmann ; Magnus Huber ; Alexander Kautzsch. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2014. – xviii, 513 p. – (Varieties of English around the world ; G49) | In honour of Edgar Schneider on the occasion of his 60th birthday.

571 Mesthrie, Rajend: English in India and South Africa : comparisons, commonalities and contrasts. – *AfrS* 74/2, 2015, 186-198.

572 Plessis, Deon du; Bekker, Ian: 'To err is human' : the case for neorhoticity in White South African English. – *LM* 45/1, 2014, 23-39 | E. ab.

573 Siebers, Lucia: *Morphosyntax in Black South African English : a socio-linguistic analysis of Xhosa English*. – Tübingen : Narr, 2011. – 256 p. – (Language in performance ; 45).

574 *The variability of current World Englishes* / Ed. by Eugene Green and Charles F. Meyer. – Berlin : De Gruyter Mouton, 2014. – viii, 287 p. – (Topics in English linguistics ; 87/1).

575 Vos, Mark de: Homogeneity in subject-verb concord in South African English. – *LM* 44/1, 2013, 58-77 | E. ab.

576 Zerbian, Sabine: Prosodic marking of focus in transitive sentences in varieties of South African English. – (563), 209-240.

#### 10.1. SOCIOLINGUISTICS

577 Bekker, Ian: South African English as a *late* 19th-century extraterritorial variety. – *EWW* 33/2, 2012, 127-146.

578 Collins, James: Dilemmas of race, register, and inequality in South Africa. – *LiS* 46/1, 2017, 39-56 | E. ab.

579 Deumert, Ana; Mabandla, Nkululeko: 'Every day a new shop pops up' : South Africa's 'new' Chinese diaspora and the multilingual transformation of rural towns. – *ET* 29/1, 2013, 44-52.

580 *English in the Indian diaspora* / Ed. by Marianne Hundt ; Devyani Sharma. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2014. – ix, 244 p. – (Varieties of English around the world ; G50).

581 Hartmann, Dieter; Zerbian, Sabine: Rhoticity in Black South African English - a sociolinguistic study. – *SALALS* 27/2, 2009, 135-148.

582 Jansen, Carel: 'Don't be a fool, put a condom on your tool' : effecten van retorische figuren in hiv/aids-voorlichtingsmateriaal in Zuid-Afrika. – *IN* 49/2, 2011, 103-116 | 'Don't be a fool, put a condom on your

tool' : the effects of rhetoric figures in HIV/AIDS educational materials in South Africa | E. ab.

583 Mesthrie, Rajend; Chevalier, Alida: Sociophonetics and the Indian diaspora : the NURSE vowel and other selected features in South African Indian English. – (580), 85-104.

584 Mesthrie, Rajend: Class, gender, and substrate erasure in sociolinguistic change : a sociophonetic study of schwa in deracializing South African English. – *Language* 93/2, 2017, 314-346 | E. ab | Incl. web-only supplemental material.

585 Mesthrie, Rajend: Ethnicity, substrate and place : the dynamics of Coloured and Indian English in five South African cities in relation to the variable (t). – *LVC* 24/3, 2012, 371-395 | On realizations of /t/ and /θ/

586 Mesthrie, Rajend: A lesser globalisation : a sociolexical study of Indian Englishes in diaspora, with a primary focus on South Africa. – (580), 171-186.

587 Minow, Verena: *Variation in the grammar of Black South African English*. – Frankfurt am Main : Lang, 2010. – xii, 266 p. – (Europäische Hochschulschriften. Reihe 21: Linguistik ; 362).

588 Rooy, Bertus van: Present perfect and past tense in Black South African English. – (535), 149-168 | E. ab.

589 Toefy, Tracey: Revisiting the kit-split in Coloured South African English. – *EWW* 38/3, 2017, 336-363 | E. ab.

590 *Varieties of English in writing : the written word as linguistic evidence* / Ed. by Raymond Hickey. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2010. – x, 378 p. – (Varieties of English around the world ; G41).

591 Wilmot, Kirstin: "Coconuts" and the middle-class. – *EWW* 35/3, 2014, 306-337.

592 Włodarczyk, Matylda: Community or communities of practice? : 1820 petitioners in the Cape Colony. – (522), 83-102.

#### 10.1.1. LANGUAGE ATTITUDES AND SOCIAL IDENTITY

593 Álvarez-Mosquera, Pedro: The use of the Implicit Association Test (IAT) for sociolinguistic purposes in South Africa. – *LM* 48/2, 2017, 69-90 | E. ab.

594 Antia, Bassey Edem; Dyers, Charlyn: Epistemological access through lecture materials in multiple modes and language varieties : the role of ideologies and multilingual literacy practices in student evaluations of such materials at a South African University. – *LPol* 15/4, 2016, 525-545 | E. ab.

595 Chariatte, Nadine: Identity construction through phonetic crossing among young Capetonian gang members. – *SoLS* 10/1-2, 2016, 45-66.

596 Coetzee-Van Rooy, Susan: The identity issue in bi- and multilingual repertoires in South Africa : implications for Schneider's dynamic model. – (570), 39-57.

597 McCormick, Tracey Lee: A queer analysis of the discursive construction of gay identity in *Gayle : the language of kinks and queens: a history and dictionary of gay language in South Africa (2003)*. – *SALALS* 27/2, 2009, 149-161 | Cf. 399.

598 McKinney, Carolyn: Orientations to English in post-apartheid schooling. – *ET* 29/1, 2013, 22-27.

599 Mesthrie, Rajend; Chevalier, Alida; McLachlan, Kate: A perception test for the deracialisation of middle class South African English. – *SALALS* 33/4, 2015, 391-409.

600 Mesthrie, Rajend: The sociophonetic effects of event X : post-apartheid Black South African English in multicultural contact with other South African Englishes. – (570), 58-69.

601 Parmegiani, Andrea: The (dis)ownership of English : language and identity construction among Zulu students at the University of KwaZulu-Natal. – *IJBEB* 17/6, 2014, 683-694 | E. ab.

#### 10.1.2. LANGUAGE POLICY AND LANGUAGE PLANNING

602 Banda, Felix: Defying monolingual education : alternative bilingual discourse practices in selected coloured schools in Cape Town. – *JMMD* 31/3, 2010, 221-235.

603 Drummond, Andrew: An analysis of language policy versus practice in two South African universities. – *SALALS* 34/1, 2016, 71-79 | E. ab.

604 Hibbert, Liesel: Local and global perspectives on overcoming literacy challenges in South Africa. – *IJSL* 206, 2010, 207-226.

605 Ndhlovu, Finex: Beyond neo-liberal instructional models : why multilingual instruction matters for South African skills development. – *IJLS* 7/3, 2013, 33-58.

606 Olivier, Jako: Kom *join* die PUK : die gebruik van Engels in honneursprogramme op 'n Afrikaanse universiteitskampus van die NWU = Come join the PUK : the use of English in honours programmes at an Afrikaans university campus of the NWU. – *TsGw* 54/4, 2014, 610-634 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

607 Rooy, Bertus van; Coetzee-Van Rooy, Susan: The language issue and academic performance at a South African University. – *SALALS* 33/1, 2015, 31-46.

## 10.1.3. LANGUAGE FOR SPECIAL PURPOSES

608 Coertze, Salome; Conradie, Simone; Burger, Chris R.; Huddlestone, Kate: Aviation English in South African airspace. – *SPIPLUS* 42, 2013, 41-62 | E. ab.

## 10.2.1. MULTILINGUALISM

609 Buschfeld, Sarah; Kautzsch, Alexander: English in Namibia : a first approach. – *EWW* 25/2, 2014, 121-160.

610 Deumert, Ana; Masinyana, Sibabalwe Oscar: Mobile language choices : the use of English and isiXhosa in text messages (SMS) : evidence from a bilingual South African sample. – *EWW* 29/2, 2008, 117-147.

611 Deumert, Ana: Tracking the demographics of (urban) language shift : an analysis of South African census data. – *JMMD* 31/1, 2010, 13-35.

612 Dyers, Charlyn: Truncated multilingualism or language shift? : an examination of language use in intimate domains in a new non-racial working class township in South Africa. – *JMMD* 29/2, 2008, 110-126 | On the use of English, Afrikaans and Xhosa.

613 McCormick, Kay M.: Polarizing and blending : compatible practices in a bilingual urban community in Cape Town. – (639), 191-209.

## 10.2.3. LANGUAGE CONTACT

614 Bekker, Ian: The formation of South African English. – *ET* 29/1, 2013, 3-9.

615 Deumert, Ana; Mesthrie, Rajend: Contact in the African area : a Southern African perspective. – (524), 549-559 | E. ab.

616 Kruger, Haidee; Rooy, Bertus van: Syntactic and pragmatic transfer effects in reported-speech constructions in three contact varieties of English influenced by Afrikaans. – *LS* 56, 2016, 118-131.

617 Mesthrie, Rajend: Contact and African Englishes. – (138), 518-537.

618 Mesthrie, Rajend: A robust, living substratum : contact and socio-linguistic factors in the evolution of a variety of Black English in Kimberley, South Africa. – (574), 127-146.

619 Rooy, Bertus van: Convergence and endonormativity at phase 4 of the dynamic model. – (570), 21-38.

620 Wasserman, Ronel: *Moet en must* : 'n geval van Afrikaanse invloed op Suid-Afrikaanse Engels. – *TsGw* 56/1, 2016, 25-44 | *Moet* and *must* : a case of Afrikaans influence on South African English | E. & Afrikaans ab.

## 10.3. LINGUISTIC GEOGRAPHY

621 *Areal features of the Anglophone world* / Ed. by Raymond Hickey. – Berlin : De Gruyter Mouton, 2012. – viii, 502 p. – (Topics in English linguistics ; 80).

## 10.4. DIALECTOLOGY

622 Mesthrie, Rajend; Chevalier, Alida; Dunne, Timothy: A regional and social dialectology of the BATH vowel in South African English. – *LVC* 27/1, 2015, 1-30.

623 Rooy, Bertus van: A multidimensional analysis of student writing in Black South African English. – *EWW* 29/3, 2008, 268-305.

624 Rooy, Bertus van; Terblanche, Lize: Complexity in word-formation processes in new varieties of South African English. – *SALALS* 28/4, 2010, 357-374.

## 11. COMPARATIVE LINGUISTICS

625 Sharma, Devyani: Shared features in New Englishes. – (621), 211-232.

## 11.1. HISTORICAL LINGUISTICS AND LANGUAGE CHANGE

626 *Grammatical change in English world-wide* / Ed. by Peter Collins. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2015. – vi, 488 p. – (Studies in corpus linguistics ; 67).

627 Rossouw, Ronel; Rooy, Bertus van: Diachronic changes in modality in South African English. – *EWW* 33/1, 2012, 1-26.

628 Siebers, Lucia: 'An abundant harvest to the philologer'? : Jeremiah Goldswain, Thomas Shone and nineteenth-century South African English. – (590), 263-294 | Based on Jeremiah Goldswain's chronicle (1820) and the journal of Thomas Shone (1784-1868), both settlers in South Africa.

## 12.3. STATISTICAL AND QUANTITATIVE LINGUISTICS

629 Brato, Thorsten; Huber, Magnus: English in Africa. – (621), 161-185.

630 Rooy, Bertus van: Corpus linguistic work on Black South African English. – *ET* 29/1, 2013, 10-15.

## Languages of Mainland Southeast Asia

### **1. Sino-Tibetan**

#### **1.2. Sinitic (Chinese)**

##### **1.2.2. Modern Chinese**

631 Yu, Ke; Vivier, Elmé: Speaking or being Chinese : the case of South African-born Chinese. – *IJSL* 236, 2015, 55-73.

## Languages of Sub-Saharan Africa

632 *African languages and language practice research in the 21st century : interdisciplinary themes and perspectives* / Editors: Monwabisi K. Ralarala ; Ken Barris ; Eunice Ivala ; Sibawu Siyepu. – Cape Town : CASAS, 2017. – xviii, 378 p. – (CASAS book series ; 122).

633 *Africa's endangered languages : documentary and theoretical approaches* / Edited by Jason Kandybowicz ; Harold Torrence. – Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2017. – x, 520 p.

634 Banda, Felix: Language policy and orthographic harmonization across linguistic, ethnic and national boundaries in Southern Africa. – *LPol* 15/3, 2016, 257-275 | E. ab.

635 Bremzinger, Matthias: Blood becomes money : lexical acculturation in Southern Africa. – (48), 37-71.

636 *Gender and language in sub-Saharan Africa : tradition, struggle and change* / Ed. by Lilian Lem Atanga ; Sibonile Edith Ellece ; Lia Litosseliti ; Jane Sunderland. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2013. – xi, 331 p. – (Impact. Studies in language and society ; 33).

637 *Intonation in African tone languages* / Ed. by Laura J. Downing and Annie Rialland. – Berlin : De Gruyter Mouton, 2017. – iv, 442 p. – (Phonology and phonetics ; 24).

638 Kwamwngamalu, Nkonko M.: Multilingualism in Southern Africa. – (128), 791-812.

639 *The languages of urban Africa* / Ed. by Fiona Mc Laughlin. – London : Continuum, 2009. – x, 238 p. – (Advances in sociolinguistics).

640 Lubinga, Elizabeth: Exploring the possibility of including African proverbs in HIV and AIDS messages to influence reception by the South African youth. – *SAfrJAL* 34/Suppl., 2014, 15-22.

641 Ndhlovu, Finex: Cross-border languages in Southern African economic and political integration. – *AfrS* 72/1, 2013, 19-40.

642 Phaahla, Pinkie: Indigenous African languages as agents of change in the transformation of higher education institutions in South Africa : Unisa. – *NJAS* 23/1, 2014, 31-56 | Electronic publ.

643 Raselekoane, Nanga Raymond: African languages and the challenges of community development in South Africa. – *SAfrJAL* 34/Suppl., 2014, 1-8.

644 *Sociolinguistics in African contexts : perspectives and challenges* / Augustin Emmanuel Ebongue ; Ellen Hurst, editors. – Cham : Springer, 2017. – viii, 349 p. – (Multilingual education ; 20) | Not analyzed.

## 1. Niger-Congo (Niger-Kordofanian)

### 1.7. Benue-Congo

645 Bennett, William: Agreement, history, and Obolo : a reply to Connell. – *SPILPLUS* 48, 2015, 13-15 | Reply to 183.

#### 1.7.1. Bantu

646 *Bantu languages : analyses, description and theory* / Ed. by Karsten Legère ; Christina Thornell. – Köln : Köppe, 2011. – xiv, 347 p. – (East African languages and dialects ; 20).

647 Seidel, Frank: *A grammar of Yeyi : a Bantu language of Southern Africa*. – Köln : Köppe, 2008. – 464 p. – (Grammatische Analysen afrikanischer Sprachen = Grammatical analyses of African languages ; 33).

### 0.5. SEMIOTICS

648 Dowling, Tessa: 'Akuchanywa apha please' No peeing here please : the language of signage in Cape Town. – *SAfrJAL* 30/2, 2010, 192-208.

### 0.6. APPLIED LINGUISTICS

649 Marten, Lutz; Mostert, Carola: Background languages, learner motivation and self-assessed progress in learning Zulu as an additional language in the UK. – *IJM* 9/1, 2012, 101-128 | E. ab.

650 Mayaba, N. N.: Strategy to improve a conversational isiXhosa module : insights gained from 'out-of-class' experiences of Foundation phase English/Afrikaans students. – *SAfrJAL* 36/2, 2016, 133-140.

651 Nkomo, Dion: Beyond meaning in dictionaries : teaching Ndebele grammar using *Isichazamazwi SesiNdebele*. – *SAfrJAL* 29/1, 2009, 30-42.

652 Otlogetswe, Thapelo Joseph: The design of Setswana Scrabble. – *SAfrJAL* 36/2, 2016, 153-161.

653 Scaraffiotti, Zamantuli: *Parlons Xhosa : Afrique du Sud*. – Paris : L'Harmattan, 2011. – 158 p. – (Parlons).

## 1. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

654 Bennett, William G.; Diemer, Maxine; Kerford, Justine; Probert, Tracy; Wesi, Tsholofelo: Setswana (South African). – *JIPA* 46/2, 2016, 235-246 | Illustrations of the IPA.

655 Doke, Clement M.: *The phonetics of the Zulu language*. – München : LINCOM Europa, 2012. – 310 p. – (LINCOM grammatica ; 166).

656 Gxowa-Dlayedwa, Ntombizodwa Cynthia: Ukufundisa izicuku zeziqhakancu emagameni. – *PerLinguam* 31/3, 2015, 32-48 | Teaching click clusters in words | E. & Xhosa ab.

657 Naidoo, Shamila: A re-evaluation of the Zulu implosive [b]. – *SAfrJAL* 30/1, 2010, 1-10.

658 Naidoo, Shamila; Roux, Justus C.: Integrating phonetics and phonology in the description of the intrusive stop formation process in Zulu. – *SAfrJAL* 28/1, 2008, 36-48.

659 Wissing, Daan P.: Aspects of the phonetics and phonology of Southern Sotho /a/. – *SAfrJAL* 30/2, 2010, 234-241.

### 1.1. PHONETICS

660 Chen, Yiya; Downing, Laura J.: All depressors are not alike : a comparison of Shanghai Chinese and Zulu. – (29), 243-265.

661 [Thomas, Kimberley D] Thomas-Vilakati, Kimberly Diane: *Coproduction and coarticulation in Isizulu clicks*. – Berkeley, CA : Univ. of California Press, 2010. – 258 p. – (Univ. of California publications. Linguistics ; 144).

#### 1.1.1. ARTICULATORY PHONETICS

662 Lee-Kim, Sang-Im; Kawahara, Shigeto; Lee, Seunghun J.: The 'whistled' fricative in Xitsonga : its articulation and acoustics. – *Phonetica* 71/1, 2014, 50-81.

663 Shosted, Ryan K.: Articulatory and acoustic characteristics of whistled fricatives in Changana. – (30), 119-129.

## 1.1.2. ACOUSTIC PHONETICS

664 Barnard, Etienne; Wissing, Daan P.: Vowel variation in Southern Sotho : an acoustic investigation. – *SALALS* 26/2, 2008, 255-265.

665 Boyer, One Tlale; Zsiga, Elizabeth C.: Phonological devoicing and phonetic voicing in Setswana. – (31), 82-89 | Also freely available online.

666 Le Roux, Mia: An acoustic comparison : Setswana vowels versus the cardinal vowels. – *SAfriJAL* 32/2, 2012, 175-180.

667 Le Roux, Mia; Le Roux, Jurie: An acoustic assessment of Setswana vowels. – *SAfriJAL* 28/2, 2008, 156-171.

668 Midtlyng, Patrick J.: The effects of speech rate on VOT for initial plosives and click accompaniments in Zulu. – (30), 105-118.

669 Wissing, Daan P.: Aspects of vowel raising in Southern Sotho and Setswana : an acoustic approach. – *SAfriJAL* 30/2, 2010, 242-249.

670 Wissing, Daan P.; Pienaar, Wikus: Evaluating vowel normalisation procedures : a case study on Southern Sotho vowels. – *SALALS* 32/1, 2014, 97-111.

671 Zerbian, Sabine; Barnard, Etienne: Phonetics of intonation in South African Bantu languages. – *SALALS* 26/2, 2008, 235-254.

## 1.1.4. SPEECH TECHNOLOGY

672 Westhuizen, Ewald van der; Niesler, Thomas: The effect of postlexical deletion on automatic speech recognition in fast spontaneously spoken Zulu. – *Interspeech*, 2016, 3559-3563 | E. ab.

## 1.2. PHONOLOGY

673 Coetzee, Andries W.; Pretorius, Rigardt: Phonetically grounded phonology and sound change : the case of Tswana labial plosives. – *JPhon* 38/3, 2010, 404-421.

674 Gouskova, Maria; Zsiga, Elizabeth C.; Tlale Boyer, One: Grounded constraints and the consonants of Setswana. – *Lingua* 121/15, 2011, 2120-2152.

675 Halpert, Claire: Overlap-driven consequences of nasal place assimilation. – (6), 345-368 | On Zulu.

676 Lee, Seunghun J.; Burheni, Clementinah: Repair strategies in labial dissimilation : diminutive formations in Xitsonga. – *SPILPLUS* 44, 2014, 89-103 | E. ab.

677 Malambe, Gloria B.: Mid vowel assimilation in siSwati. – *SALALS* 33/3, 2015, 261-272.

678 Vratsanos, Alyssa; Kadenge, Maxwell: Hiatus resolution in Xitsonga. – *SPILPLUS* 52, 2017, 175-196 | E. ab.

#### 1.2.1. SUPRASEGMENTAL PHONOLOGY (PROSODY)

679 Archer, Brent: Sonority in Zulu. – (69), 63-75.

680 Batibo, Herman M.: The evolution and adaptation of Swahili and Tswana syllable structures. – (46), 13-33.

681 Bennett, William G.; Lee, Seunghun J.: A surface constraint in Xitsonga : \*li. – *AfrL* 21, 2015, 3-27 | E. & Fr. ab.

682 Downing, Laura J.: Prosodic phrasing in relative clauses : a comparative look at Zulu, Chewa and Tumbuka. – (646), 17-29.

683 Halpert, Claire: Prosody/syntax mismatches in the Zulu conjoint/disjoint alternation. – (989), 329-349.

684 Harford, Carolyn; Malambe, Gloria B.: Optimal register variation : high vowel elision in siSwati. – *SALALS* 33/3, 2015, 343-357.

685 Lee, Seunghun J.: Cumulative effects in Xitsonga : high-tone spreading and depressor consonants. – *SALALS* 33/3, 2015, 273-290.

686 McCarthy, John J.; Mullin, Kevin; Smith, Brian W.: Implications of harmonic serialism for lexical tone association. – (72), 265-297 | Evidence from Esimbi, Kikuyu, Etung and Venda.

687 Zeller, Jochen; Zerbian, Sabine; Cook, Toni: Prosodic evidence for syntactic phrasing in Zulu. – (989), 295-328.

688 Zerbian, Sabine; Barnard, Etienne: Realisations of a single high tone in Northern Sotho. – *SALALS* 27/4, 2009, 357-380.

689 Zerbian, Sabine: Morpho-phonological and morphological minimality in Tswana monosyllabic stems (Southern Bantu). – (18), 131-148.

690 Zerbian, Sabine: Onset consonants in Tswana : Cw-sequences and affricates. – (46), 143-165.

691 Zerbian, Sabine: Sentence intonation in Tswana (Sotho-Tswana group). – (637), 393-433 | E. ab.

#### 1.3. MOR(PHO)PHONOLOGY

692 Braver, Aaron; Bennett, William G.: Phonotactic c(l)ues to Bantu noun class disambiguation. – *Ling Van* 2/1, 2016, 1-11.

693 Cook, Toni: Adjectival reduplication in Zulu. – *SALALS* 32/4, 2014, 433-446.

694 Cook, Toni: The status of the macrostem in reduplication in Ndebele and Zulu. – (26), 46-60.

695 Creissels, Denis: The conjoint/disjoint distinction in the tonal morphology of Tswana. – (989), 200-238.

696 Dube, Progress; Ndebele, Lickel: A morphophonological account of Ndebele demonstrative delimitators. – (40), 219-233.

697 Harford, Carolyn: Prosody in verbal inflection in Isizulu. – (21), 288-297.

698 Kotzé, Albert E.: Making sense of irregular realisations of the past tense suffix in Northern Sotho : the phonology-morphology interface. – *SALALS* 26/2, 2008, 217-234.

699 Lee, Seunghun J.: Domains of H tone spreading and the noun class prefix in Xitsonga. – *SALALS* 32/1, 2014, 21-34.

700 Mathonsi, Nhlanhla; Naidoo, Shamila: Imbrication triggered by the suffix *-ile* in isiZulu. – *SAfrJAL* 32/2, 2012, 167-173.

701 Monich, Irina: Tonal processes in the Setswana verb. – *JALL* 35/2, 2014, 141-204.

702 Spuy, Andrew van der: Bilabial palatalisation in Zulu : a morphologically conditioned phenomenon. – *SPILPLUS* 44, 2014, 71-87 | E. ab.

703 Zerbian, Sabine; Barnard, Etienne: Realisation of two adjacent high tones : acoustic evidence from Northern Sotho. – *SALALS* 28/2, 2010, 101-121.

704 Zerbian, Sabine: A guide to tones in Tswana locatives. – *SAfrJAL* 31/2, 2011, 254-264.

## 2. GRAMMAR, MORPHOSYNTAX

705 Andrason, Alexander; Dlali, Mawande: Tense and aspect of performatives in isiXhosa. – *SAfrJAL* 37/2, 2017, 149-161 | E. ab.

706 Baker, Anne Edith: Die Nomenklassifizierung des Zulu als positiver Transfer in DaFiA in Südafrika. – (2), 351-356 | [The noun classification of Zulu as positive transfer in DaFiA in South Africa].

707 Creissels, Denis: The 'new adjectives' of Tswana. – (75), 75-94.

708 Dowling, Tessa; Deyi, Somikazi; Whitelaw, Emma: Merger of noun classes 3 and 1 : a case study with bilingual isiXhosa-speaking youth. – *SAfrJAL* 37/1, 2017, 41-49 | E. ab.

709 Gxowa-Dlayedwa, Ntombizodwa Cynthia: The reflexive marker as drawn from authentic texts in isiXhosa. – *SAfrJAL* 31/2, 2011, 302-314.

710 Kubayi, Sikheto Joe; Madadzhe, Richard Ndwayamato: The non-derived ideophone in Xitsonga. – *SAfrJAL* 35/2, 2015, 261-271.

711 Lee, Seunghun J.; [Hlungwani, Madala Crous] Hlungwani, Crous: Aspectual auxiliary verbs in Xitsonga. – *SPILPLUS* 48, 2015, 113-135 | E. ab.

712 Posthumus, Lionel C.: Naming the so-called continuous past tenses of the south-eastern Bantu languages with particular reference to Zulu. – *SAfrJAL* 28/1, 2008, 69-79.

713 Posthumus, Lionel C.: Tense marking in copulatives with particular reference to isiZulu. – *SAfrJAL* 37/2, 2017, 163-172 | E. ab.

714 Pretorius, W. J.: Adverbial descriptions in Northern Sotho. – *SAfrJAL* 29/1, 2009, 20-29.

715 Taljard, Elsabé; Schryver, Gilles-Maurice de: A corpus-driven account of the noun classes and genders in Northern Sotho. – *SALALS* 34/2, 2016, 169-185 | E. ab.

716 Visser, Marianna W.: Definiteness and specificity in the isiXhosa determiner phrase. – *SAfrJAL* 28/1, 2008, 11-29.

## 2.1. MORPHOLOGY AND WORD-FORMATION

717 Dube, Progress; Ndebele, Lickel; Ndlovu, Mbulisi: An analysis of the status of the secondary noun prefixes in Ndebele. – *SAfrJAL* 34/2, 2014, 145-149.

718 Gowlett, Derek F.; Dowling, Tessa: Incipient merger of Cls 11 and 5 in Xhosa? – *SAfrJAL* 35/1, 2015, 67-81.

719 Halpert, Claire; Karawani, Hadil: Aspect in counterfactuals from A(rabic) to Z(ulu). – (22), 99-107.

720 Keet, C. Maria; Khumalo, Langa: Grammar rules for the isiZulu complex verb. – *SALALS* 35/2, 2017, 183-200 | E. ab.

721 Kosch, Ingeborg M.: Descriptive issues of derivation and inflection in Sesotho sa Leboa (Northern Sotho) with particular reference to 'number'. – *SALALS* 29/1, 2011, 89-96.

722 Kotzé, Albert E.: Lexical generality as a determinant of extension position in Northern Sotho. – *SAfrJAL* 31/1, 2011, 30-40.

723 Kotzé, Petronella M.: Northern Sotho grammatical descriptions : the design of a tokeniser for the verbal segment. – *SALALS* 26/2, 2008, 197-208.

724 Kotzé, Petronella M.: Tokenization rules for the disjunctively written verbal segment of Northern Sotho. – *SAfrJAL* 31/1, 2011, 121-137.

725 Mojapelo, Mampaka: Morphology and semantics of proper names in Northern Sotho. – *SAfrJAL* 29/2, 2009, 185-194.

726 Monich, Irina: Comparative morphological analysis of the perfect form in Sesotho and isiZulu. – *NLLT* 33/4, 2015, 1271-1292 | E. ab.

727 Nichols, Peter: Persistive and alternative – dual-time aspects in siSwati. – (28), 477-487.

728 Pretorius, Rigardt: The sequence and productivity of Setswana verbal suffixes. – *SPILPLUS* 44, 2014, 49-70 | E. ab.

729 Spuy, Andrew van der: The morphology of the Zulu locative. – *TPhS* 112/1, 2014, 61-79.

730 Spuy, Andrew van der: Post-inflectional derivation in Zulu : further evidence against the split morphology hypothesis. – *LM* 44/1, 2013, 78-93.

731 Spuy, Andrew van der: Zulu noun affixes : a generative account. – *SAfrJAL* 29/2, 2009, 195-215.

732 Taraldsen, Knut Tarald: The nanosyntax of Nguni noun class prefixes and concords. – *Lingua* 120/6, 2010, 1522-1548.

#### 2.1.1. INFLECTIONAL MORPHOLOGY

733 Marten, Lutz: The great siSwati locative shift. – (7), 249-267.

734 Spuy, Andrew van der: A construction grammar account of Zulu singular/plural inflection. – *NJAS* 26/3, 2017, 191-214 | E. ab.

735 Spuy, Andrew van der: Generation of the isiZulu subjunctive. – *SALALS* 30/1, 2012, 77-92.

736 Stump, Gregory T.: Rules and blocks. – (74), 421-439 | E. ab.

#### 2.1.2. DERIVATIONAL MORPHOLOGY

737 Chebanne, Andy: Case system or case traces in derivational formations in Setswana? – (21), 275-287.

738 Hlungwani, Madala Crous: Intransitive psych verbs and nominalisation in Xitsonga. – *SAfrJAL* 34/Suppl., 2014, 35-41 | Within the framework of generative lexicon theory.

739 Mletshe, Loyiso: Deverbal nominals derived from intransitive state verbs in isiXhosa : a Generative Lexicon approach. – *SAfrJAL* 37/1, 2017, 29-39 | E. ab.

740 Ndlovu, Sambulo: Structural and philosophical aspects in isiNdebele retronym derivation. – *SAfrJAL* 32/2, 2012, 153-160.

## 2.2. SYNTAX

741 Andrason, Alexander; Visser, Marianna W.: The mosaic evolution of Left Dislocation in Xhosa. – *SPILPLUS* 50, 2016, 139-158 | E. ab.

742 Buell, Leston Chandler: Class 17 as a non-locative noun class in Zulu. – *JALL* 33/1, 2012, 1-35.

743 Buell, Leston Chandler; Dreu, Simon de: Subject raising in Zulu and the nature of PredP. – *LRev* 30/3, 2013, 423-466 | E. ab.

744 Buell, Leston Chandler: VP-internal DPs and right-dislocation in Zulu. – *LIN* 25, 2008, 37-49.

745 Buell, Leston Chandler: Zulu *ngani* 'why' : postverbal and yet in CP. – *Lingua* 121/5, 2011, 805-821.

746 Burkholder, Ross: The syntactic structure of negation in Ndebele. – (9), 235-254.

747 Carstens, Vicki May; Mletshe, Loyiso: Negative concord and nominal licensing in Xhosa and Zulu. – *NLLT* 34/3, 2016, 761-804 | Erratum: p. 805-806 | E. ab.

748 Carstens, Vicki May; Mletshe, Loyiso: Radical defectivity : implications of Xhosa expletive constructions. – *LI* 46/2, 2015, 187-242.

749 Cheng, Lisa Lai-Shen; Downing, Laura J.: Against FocusP : arguments from Zulu. – (89), 247-266.

750 Cheng, Lisa Lai-Shen; Downing, Laura J.: Clefts in Durban Zulu. – (77), 141-163.

751 Cheng, Lisa Lai-Shen; Downing, Laura J.: The problems of adverbs in Zulu. – (68), 42-59.

752 Cheng, Lisa Lai-Shen; Downing, Laura J.: Where's the topic in Zulu? – *LRev* 26/2-3, 2009, 207-238.

753 Creissels, Denis: Additive coordination, comitative adjunction, and associative plural in Tswana. – *LLACAN* 2, 2016, 11-42 | E. & Fr. ab.

754 Creissels, Denis: Tswana locatives and their status in the inversion construction. – *AfrL* 17, 2011, 33-52.

755 Dreu, Merijn de; Buell, Leston Chandler: Neuter gender in a sexless language : the case of Zulu. – *LIN* 29, 2012, 41-54.

756 Duarte, Fábio Bonfim: Tense encoding, agreement patterns, definiteness and relativization strategies in Changana. – (30), 80-94.

757 Gibson, Hannah; Marten, Lutz: Variation and grammaticalisation in Bantu complex verbal constructions : the dynamics of information growth in Swahili, Rangi and SiSwati. – (76), 70-109.

758 Halpert, Claire: *Argument licensing and agreement*. – Oxford : Oxford UP, 2015. – xvi, 296 p. – (Oxford studies in comparative syntax) | On Zulu.

759 Halpert, Claire: Case, agreement, EPP and information structure : a quadruple-dissociation in Zulu. – (22), 90-98.

760 Halpert, Claire; Zeller, Jochen: Right dislocation and raising-to-object in Zulu. – *LRev* 32/3, 2015, 475-513 | E. ab.

761 Khumalo, Langa: Generative grammar and cognitive grammar : a case of the passive construction in Ndebele. – (40), 37-55.

762 Khumalo, Langa: On subject agreement in isiNdebele. – *SAfrJAL* 34/2, 2014, 137-143.

763 Khumalo, Langa: The passive and stative constructions in Ndebele : a comparative analysis. – *NJAS* 18/2, 2009, 154-174 | Electronic publ.

764 Khumalo, Langa: Passive, locative inversion in Ndebele and the unaccusative hypothesis. – *SAfrJAL* 30/1, 2010, 22-34.

765 Krüger, Casper J. H.: *Setswana syntax : a survey of word group structures*. 2 vols. – München : LINCOM Europa, 2013. – xxxi, 233; xxviii, 506 p. – (LINCOM studies in African linguistics ; 87-88).

766 Kubayi, Sikheto Joe: 'It' subject constructions in Xitsonga. – *SALALS* 31/1, 2013, 39-59.

767 Langa, David Alberto Seth: Negation in the past tense in Changana. – (21), 255-267.

768 Le Roux, Jurie: The border dispute between adverbials and conjunctions in Tswana grammar. – *SAfrJAL* 31/1, 2011, 54-65.

769 Lee, Seunghun J.; [Hlungwani, Madala Crous] Hlungwani, Crous: Distribution of conjunctive and disjunctive forms in Xitsonga. – *SPIPLUS* 52, 2017, 157-173 | E. ab.

770 Mojapelo, Mampaka: Re-examining the relationship between the subject agreement morpheme and (in)definiteness in Northern Sotho. – *Literator* 34/1, 2013, 8 p. | E. & Afrikaans ab.

771 Morapedi, Setumile: Focus constructions in Setswana : information structure approach. – (21), 268-274.

772 Ngunga, Armindo Saúl Atelela; Duarte, Fábio Bonfim; Camargos, Quesler Fagundes: Differential object marking in Mozambican languages. – (9), 333-353.

773 Pretorius, Rigardt; Berg, Ansu; Pretorius, Laurette: Multiple object agreement morphemes in Setswana : a computational approach. – *SALALS* 30/2, 2012, 203-218.

774 Sibanda, Galen: The Ndebele applicative construction. – (9), 309-332.

775 Ström, Eva-Marie Bloom: What the giant tells us about agreeing post-verbal subjects in Xhosa. – *SPIPLUS* 52, 2017, 73-100 | E. ab.

776 Visser, Marianna W.: Definiteness and specificity in the Xhosa determiner phrase. – (646), 295-314.

777 Vos, Mark de; Mitchley, Hazel: Subject marking and preverbal coordination in Sesotho : a perspective from optimality theory. – *SALALS* 30/2, 2012, 155-170.

778 Zeller, Jochen: Argument prominence and agreement : explaining an unexpected object asymmetry in Zulu. – *Lingua* 156, 2015, 17-39.

779 Zeller, Jochen: Instrument inversion in Zulu. – (32), 134-148.

780 Zeller, Jochen: Locative inversion in Bantu and predication. – *Linguistics* 51/6, 2013, 1107-1146.

781 Zeller, Jochen: Mobility as a feature : evidence from Zulu. – *SPIPLUS* 48, 2015, 69-92 | E. ab.

782 Zeller, Jochen: Object marking in isiZulu. – *SALALS* 30/2, 2012, 219-235.

783 Zeller, Jochen: On clitic left dislocation in Zulu. – *FAB* 18, 2006 (2009), 131-156.

### 3.1. LEXICOLOGY

784 Le Roux, Jurie: Revisiting Setswana basic colour terms. – *SAfJAL* 33/2, 2013, 159-164.

### 3.2. LEXICOGRAPHY

785 Mafela, Munzhedzi James: Borrowing and dictionary compilation : the case of the indigenous South African languages. – *Lexikos* 20, 2010, 691-699 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

786 Mafela, Munzhedzi James: Proverbs as illustrative examples in a Tshivenda bilingual dictionary : a reflection of meaning and culture. – *SAfJAL* 28/1, 2008, 30-35.

787 Mathangwane, Joyce T.: Abbreviations and acronyms : the case of *Tlhalosi ya Medi ya Setswana*. – *Lexikos* 25, 2015, 233-245 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

788 Mathonsi, Nhlanhla: A headword identification problem of nouns in Zulu dictionaries. – (646), 163-173.

789 Mojela, V. M.: Borrowing and loan words : the lemmatizing of newly acquired lexical items in Sesotho sa Leboa. – *Lexikos* 20, 2010, 700-707 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

790 Nkomo, Dion; Wababa, Zola: *IsiXhosa lexicography: past, present and future*. – *Lexikos* 23, 2013, 348-370 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

791 Prinsloo, D. J.; Bothma, Theo J. D.; Heid, Ulrich; Prinsloo, Daniel J.: Direct user guidance in e-dictionaries for text production and text reception: the verbal relative in Sepedi as a case study. – *Lexikos* 27, 2017, 403-426 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

792 Prinsloo, D. J.: Corpus-based lexicography for lesser-resourced languages: maximizing the limited corpus. – *Lexikos* 25, 2015, 285-300 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

793 [Schryver, Gilles Maurice] Schrijver, Gilles-Maurice de: The lexicographic treatment of quantitative pronouns in Zulu. – *Lexikos* 18, 2008, 92-105 | E. & Dutch ab.

794 Zondo, Jerry: Affirming verb lexemes in *A practical Ndebele dictionary* and in *Isichazamazwi SesiNdebele*: the case of -wa verbs. – *Lexikos* 19, Suppl., 2009, 166-174.

### 3.2.1. MONOLINGUAL LEXICOGRAPHY

795 Khumalo, Langa: Users, user-friendliness and projected uses of *Isichazamazwi SesiNdebele*: an analysis. – *Lexikos* 19, Suppl., 2009, 16-25 | On a monolingual Ndebele dictionary.

796 Maphosa, Mandlenkosi; Nkomo, Dion: The microstructure of *Isichazamazwi SesiNdebele*. – *Lexikos* 19, Suppl., 2009, 38-50 | On a monolingual Ndebele dictionary.

797 Mphahlele, Motlokwe Clifford: The lemmatisation of dialectal forms in a Northern Sotho general monolingual dictionary: is the language developed or polluted? – (43), 155-164 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

798 Ndlovu, Eventhough: Sense relations in the treatment of meaning in *Isichazamazwi SesiNdebele*. – *Lexikos* 19, Suppl., 2009, 71-85 | On a monolingual Ndebele dictionary.

799 Ndlovu, Eventhough: The treatment of borrowed nouns in *Isichazamazwi SesiNdebele* and *Isichazamazwi SezoMculo*. – *Lexikos* 19, Suppl., 2009, 86-101 | On two monolingual Ndebele dictionaries, one general and the other of musical terms.

800 Otoletswe, Thapelo Joseph: Introducing *Tlhalosi ya Medi ya Setswana*: the design and compilation of a monolingual Setswana dictionary. – *Lexikos* 23, 2013, 532-547 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

801 Otoletswe, Thapelo Joseph: Treatment of spelling variants in Setswana monolingual dictionaries. – *Lexikos* 25, 2015, 262-284 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

## 3.2.2. PLURILINGUAL LEXICOGRAPHY

802 Gouws, Rufus H.; [Prinsloo, D J] Prinsloo, Danie; Dlali, Mawande: A series of foundation phase dictionaries for a multilingual environment. – *SPIL* 43, 2014, 23-43 | E. ab.

803 *Isichazamazwi sesikole esinezilimi ezimbili isiZulu Nasingisi : esishicilewe abakwa-Oxford.Oxford bilingual school dictionary : Zulu and English* / Ed. by Gilles-Maurice de Schryver ; Nomusa Sibiya [et al.]. – Cape Town : Oxford UP. Southern Africa, 2010. – lviii, 582 p.

804 Kosch, Ingeborg M.: An analysis of the *Oxford bilingual school dictionary : Northern Sotho and English* (De Schryver 2007). – *Lexikos* 23, 2013, 611-627 | Rev. art. of 816 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

805 Kosch, Ingeborg M.: Lemmatisation of fixed expressions : the case of proverbs in northern Sotho. – *Lexikos* 26, 2016, 145-161 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

806 Madiba, Mbulungeni; Nkomo, Dion: The *Tshivenda-English þalusamaipfi/dictionary* as a product of South African lexicographic processes. – *Lexikos* 20, 2010, 307-325 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

807 Mahlangu, Sponono: The lemmatization of loan words in the *isiNdebele-English isiHlathululi-imagama/Dictionary* and their successful incorporation into the language. – *Lexikos* 24, 2014, 186-197 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

808 Mojela, V. M.: A balanced and representative corpus : the effects of strict corpus-based dictionary compilation in Sesotho sa Leboa. – *Lexikos* 23, 2013, 286-296 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

809 Mongwe, M. J.: Bilingual dictionaries in the South African context. – (43), 127-147 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

810 Nthambeleni, Mashudu; Mbulaheni Musehane, Nelson: The lemmatization of nouns in Tshivenda dictionaries. – *Lexikos* 24, 2014, 214-224 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

811 Prinsloo, D.J.: A bilingual dictionary for a specific user group : supporting Setswana speakers in the production and reception of English. – *SAfrJAL* 31/1, 2011, 66-86.

812 Prinsloo, D. J.: A critical analysis of the lemmatization of nouns and verbs in isiZulu. – *Lexikos* 21, 2011, 169-193 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

813 Prinsloo, D. J.: A critical evaluation of the paradigm approach in Sepedi lemmatization : the *Groot Noord-Sotho woerdeboek* as a case in point. – *Lexikos* 24, 2014, 251-271 | Illustrated by the verb stem -roba | E. & Afrikaans ab.

814 Prinsloo, D. J.: Die leksikografiese bewerking van verwantskapsterme in Sepedi. – *Lexikos* 22, 2012, 272-289 | E. ab.: The lexicographical treatment of kinship terminology in Sepedia | E. & Afrikaans ab.

815 Prinsloo, D. J.: Lexicographic treatment of kinship terms in an English/Sepedi-Setswana-Sesotho dictionary with an amalgamated lemmalist. – *Lexikos* 24, 2014, 272-290 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

816 *Pukuntšu ya polelopedi ya sekolo : Sesotho sa Leboa le Sesimane : e gatisitšwe ke Oxford.Oxford bilingual school dictionary : Northern Sotho and English* / Ed. by G.-M. de Schryver ; M. Mogodi ; E. Taljard [et al.]. – Cape Town : Oxford UP, 2007. – xii, 552 p.

817 Schryver, Gilles-Maurice de: The lexicographic treatment of ideo-phones in Zulu. – *Lexikos* 19, 2009, 34-54 | On a Zulu-English lexicographic project.

818 Schryver, Gilles-Maurice de: *Oxford Isixhosa – Isingesi isichazimagma sesikolo.Oxford English – Isixhosa school dictionary* / Eds.-in-chief: Gilles-Maurice de Schryver (consulting) ; Mary Reynolds ; Isixhosa-Isingesi compilers: Fumanekile Dyubhele ; Linda Nelani ; Nelisa Sipamla ; ed.: Wendy Walton ; English-Isixhosa compiler: Mary Reynolds ; ed.: Sidney Zotwana ; translators: Fumanekile Dyubhele ; Nontembiso Jaxa ; Fikiswa Magqashela ; Linda Nelani ; Nelisa Sipamla ; [et al.]. – Cape Town : Oxford UP. Southern Africa, 2014. – 640 p.

819 Schryver, Gilles-Maurice de: Revolutionizing Bantu lexicography – a Zulu case study. – *Lexikos* 20, 2010, 161-201 | E. & Du. ab.

### 3.4. TERMINOLOGY

820 Alberts, Mariëtta; Mollema, Nina: Developing legal terminology in African languages as aid to the court interpreter : a South African perspective. – *Lexikos* 23, 2013, 29-58 | Predominantly on Northern Sotho | E. & Afrikaans ab.

821 Koopman, Adrian: *Zulu plant names*. – Pietermaritzburg : University of Natal Press, 2015. – 324 p.

822 Mabule, D. R.: The taboos attached to the translation of biological terms from English into Northern Sotho. – *SAfriJAL* 29/1, 2009, 43-53.

823 Moyo, Nobuhle; Nkomo, Dion: Not mere lexicographic cosmetics : the compilation and structural features of *Isichazamazwi SezoMcilo*. – *Lexikos* 19, Suppl., 2009, 51-70 | On a Ndebele musical terms dictionary.

824 Taljard, Elsabé: Cattle and their colours : a synchronic investigation of cattle colour terminology in Northern Sotho. – *SAfJAL* 35/2, 2015, 199-205.

825 Taljard, Elsabé; Nchabeleng, Mahlodi Jean: Management and internal standardization of chemistry terminology : a Northern Sotho case study. – *Lexikos* 21, 2011, 194-216 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

### 3.5. PHRASEOLOGY, PAROEMIOLOGY

826 Mafela, Munzhedzi James: On the phraseology of Tshivenda idioms. – (86), 211-224 | E. & Pol. ab.

827 Possa, Rethabile Marriet: The form of contemporary Sesotho proverbs. – *SAfJAL* 34/Suppl., 2014, 61-69.

## 4.1. SEMANTICS

828 Ngcobo, Mtholeni N: Zulu noun classes revisited : a spoken corpus-based approach. – *SAfJAL* 30/1, 2010, 11-21.

829 Taljard, Elsabé: In search of larger units of meaning : a foray into Northern Sotho data. – *LM* 45/1, 2014, 91-109 | E. ab.

### 4.1.1. LEXICAL SEMANTICS

830 Bosch, Sonja E.; Pretorius, Laurette: A computational approach to Zulu verb morphology within the context of lexical semantics. – *Lexikos* 27, 2017, 152-182 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

831 Mathonsi, Nhlanhla: Semantic variation and the notion of polysemy in Zulu. – *SAfJAL* 29/1, 2009, 87-95.

832 Nokelé, Amanda B. B.: Identifying conceptual metaphors using the Metaphor Identification Procedure Vrije Universiteit (MIPVU). – *SAfJAL* 34/1, 2014, 75-86 | On isiXhosa.

### 4.1.2. GRAMMATICAL SEMANTICS

833 [Groenewald, H. C.] Groenewald, Manie: Comments on 'A critique of "A re-evaluation of tense in isiZulu" by Lionel Posthumus. – *Literator* 37/1, 2016, 2 p | Comm. on 835.

834 Groenewald, Hermanus C.: A re-evaluation of tenses in isiZulu. – *Literator* 35/1, 2014, 8 p | E. & Afrikaans ab.

835 Posthumus, Lionel C.: A critique of 'A re-evaluation of tense in isi-Zulu'. – *Literator* 37/1, 2016, 12 p | E. & Afrikaans ab | Comm. on 834.

836 Stavić, Stefan: The perfective and imperfective aspects in Xhosa. – *SPIPLUS* 52, 2017, 45-72 | E. ab.

#### 4.2. PRAGMATICS, DISCOURSE ANALYSIS AND TEXT GRAMMAR

837 Bagwasi, Mompoloki Mmangaka: Pragmatics of letter writing in Setswana. – *JoP* 40/3, 2008, 525-536 | Comparing English and Setswana letter writing in Botswana during the protectorate period (1885-1966).

838 Dlali, Mawande; Mogase, Phuti: The speech act of advice in Setswana educational contexts. – *SAfJAL* 29/2, 2009, 145-157.

839 Gxowa-Dlayedwa, Ntombizodwa Cynthia: Identifying unmarked topical thematic patterns : evidence from spoken and written isiXhosa texts. – *SAfJAL* 33/2, 2013, 213-223.

840 Hendrikse, A. P.; Nomdebevana, N.; Allwood, Jens: An exploration of the nature, functions and subcategories of the discourse functional category, Interactive, in spoken Xhosa. – *SAfJAL* 36/1, 2016, 93-101.

841 Kaschula, Russell H.; Mostert, André: The influence of cellular phone "speak" on isiXhosa rules of communication. – *SPIPLUS* 37, 2009, 69-88.

842 Ndlovu, Manqoba Victor: Referential cohesion in isiZulu translated health texts. – *SALALS* 31/3, 2013, 349-357.

843 Ntombela, Sipho Albert: *Maskandi* : a critical discourse analysis of indigenous isiZulu songs. – *SALALS* 34/2, 2016, 109-120 | E. ab.

844 Sengani, Thomas M.: Controversies around the so-called alliterative concord in African languages : a critical language awareness on communicative competence with specific reference to Tshivenda. – *SAfJAL* 33/2, 2013, 189-201.

845 Sengani, Thomas M.: Hidden dialogicality in *Mafhuwe* – a critical discourse analytical interpretation of struggles of power relations in Tshivenda women songs of protest. – *SAfJAL* 31/2, 2011, 178-189.

#### 7. TRANSLATION

846 Mabule, D. R.: Issues involved in translating technical texts from English into Northern Sotho. – *SAfJAL* 36/2, 2016, 217-224.

847 Madadzhe, Richard Ndwayamato; Mashamba, Mabula: Translation and cultural adaptation with specific reference to Tshivenda and English : a case of medical terms and expressions. – *SAfJAL* 34/Suppl., 2014, 51-56.

848 Moropa, Koliswa: Utilizing 'hot words' in ParaConc to verify lexical simplification strategies in English-Xhosa parallel texts. – *SAfJAL* 29/2, 2009, 227-241.

849 Wildsmith-Cromarty, Rosemary: Can academic/scientific discourse really be translated across English and African languages? – *SALALS* 26/1, 2008, 147-169 | On isiZulu, SeSotho & SeTswana.

#### 8.1. ORTHOGRAPHY

850 Mabaso, X. E.: Some issues regarding the standardisation of the terminative vowel in Xitsonga. – *SAfJAL* 37/2, 2017, 187-194 | E. ab.

851 Malambe, Gloria B.; Khumalo, Langa; Hoza, Mfusi; Ngubane, Sihawukele E.; Zulu, Nogwaja S.; Mazibuko, Guguethu; Vilakati, Sizakele; Phiri, Sellinah; Madonsela, Stanley; Nkomo, Dion; Gumedze, Grace; Masilela, Piet; Madolo, Yolisa; Gxowa-Dlayedwa, Ntombizodwa Cynthia; Jokweni, Mbulelo W.: *A unified standard orthography for Nguni languages : South Africa, Swaziland, Zimbabwe, Tanzania, Malawi and Zambia*. – Cape Town : CASAS, 2013. – 30 p. – (Monograph series [CASAS] ; 255).

852 Musehane, Mbulaheni; Maṭhabi, Mashudu: Orthographic errors in written Tshivenda on funeral programmes of Vhembe District Municipality funeral undertakers. – *SAfJAL* 36/2, 2016, 225-230.

853 Nkuna, Paul H.: Orthographic considerations regarding the class 4 noun prefix and some verb stems in Xitsonga. – *SAfJAL* 33/1, 2013, 75-78.

#### 8.2. PUNCTUATION

854 Chokoe, Sekgaila: Tlhalošontši ya mongwalo : go ngwala seo se sa tšweletšego molaetša ka tshwanelo. – *SAfJAL* 37/2, 2017, 195-201 | Orthographic ambiguity : writing the unmeant | E. & Sotho ab.

#### 9.2. PSYCHOLINGUISTICS

855 Bylund, Emanuel; Athanasopoulos, Panos: Language and thought in a multilingual context : the case of isiXhosa. – *Bilingualism* 17/2, 2014, 431-441.

856 Diemer, Maxine; Merwe, Kristin van der; Vos, Mark de: The development of phonological awareness literacy measures for isiXhosa. – *SALALS* 33/3, 2015, 325-341.

## 9.2.2. LANGUAGE COMPREHENSION

857 Kgolo, Naledi; Eisenbeiß, Sonja: The role of morphological structure in the processing of complex forms : evidence from Setswana deverbal nouns. – *LCN* 30/9, 2015, 1116-1133.

## 9.2.2.1. PSYCHOLOGY OF READING

858 Fakude, Pheladi Florina: Reading comprehension trajectories in Sepedi : a case of rural grade 7 learners. – *SAfrJAL* 34/Suppl., 2014, 23-27.

859 Hefer, Esté: Reading first and second language subtitles : Sesotho viewers reading in Sesotho and English. – *SALALS* 31/3, 2013, 359-373.

860 Hefer, Esté: Television subtitles and literacy : where do we go from here? – *JMMD* 34/7, 2013, 636-652.

861 Land, Sandra: Reading and the orthography of isiZulu. – *SAfrJAL* 35/2, 2015, 163-175.

862 Rooy, Bertus van; Pretorius, Elizabeth J.: Is reading in an agglutinating language different from an analytic language? : an analysis of isiZulu and English reading based on eye movements. – *SALALS* 31/3, 2013, 281-297.

## 9.3. LANGUAGE ACQUISITION

863 Kline, Melissa; Demuth, Katherine: Factors facilitating implicit learning : the case of the Sesotho passive. – *LAcq* 17/4, 2010, 220-234.

## 9.3.1. FIRST LANGUAGE ACQUISITION, CHILD LANGUAGE

864 Dowling, Tessa; Gowlett, Derek F.: Problems in the acquisition of Noun Class 11 among Xhosa children. – *SALALS* 34/4, 2016, 289-309 | E. ab.

865 Gxilishe, Sandile: African languages, linguistics, child speech and speech pathology : the connection. – *PerLinguam* 24/2, 2008, 75-87 | E. ab.

## 9.3.1.1. FIRST LANGUAGE ACQUISITION BY PRE-SCHOOL CHILDREN

866 Demuth, Katherine; Machobane, 'Malillo 'Matšepo; Moloi, Francina L.: Learning how to license null noun-class prefixes in Sesotho. – *Language* 85/4, 2009, 864-883.

867 Demuth, Katherine; Moloi, Francina L.; Machobane, 'Malillo 'Matšepo: 3-Year-olds' comprehension, production, and generalization of Sesotho passives. – *Cognition* 115/2, 2010, 238-251.

868 Demuth, Katherine; Weschler, Sara: The acquisition of Sesotho nominal agreement. – *Morphology* 22/1, 2012, 67-88.

869 Maphalala, Zinhle; Pascoe, Michelle; Smouse, Mantoa Rose: Phonological development of first language isiXhosa-speaking children aged 3;0-6;0 years : a descriptive cross-sectional study. – *CL&P* 28/3, 2014, 176-194.

870 Smouse, Mantoa Rose; Gxilishe, Sandile; Villiers, Jill G. de; Villiers, Peter A. de: Children's acquisition of subject markers in isiXhosa. – (90), 209-236.

871 Smouse, Mantoa Rose: Uninterpretable features in comprehension : subject-verb agreement in isiXhosa. – *SAfrJAL* 33/1, 2013, 65-74.

#### 9.3.1.2. FIRST LANGUAGE ACQUISITION BY SCHOOL CHILDREN

872 Kunene-Nicolas, Ramona N.; Guidetti, Michèle; Colletta, Jean-Marc: A cross-linguistic study of the development of gesture and speech in Zulu and French oral narratives. – *JChL* 44/1, 2017, 36-62 | E. ab.

873 Kunene-Nicolas, Ramona N.: Zulu oral narrative development from a speech and gesture perspective. – *PerLinguam* 31/3, 2015, 1-18 | E. ab.

874 Wilsenach, Carien: Phonological skills as predictor of reading success : an investigation of emergent bilingual Northern Sotho/English learners. – *PerLinguam* 29/2, 2013, 17-32 | E. ab.

#### 9.3.2. SECOND LANGUAGE ACQUISITION

875 Lombard, Shona; Conradie, Simone: L1 influence in the L2 acquisition of isiXhosa verb placement by English and Afrikaans adolescents. – *SPILPLUS* 38, 2009, 167-181 | E. ab.

#### 9.3.2.2. GUIDED SECOND LANGUAGE ACQUISITION

876 *Multilingual universities in South Africa : reflecting society in higher education* / Ed. by Liesel Hibbert ; Christa van der Walt. – Bristol : Multilingual Matters, 2014. – xii, 223 p. – (Bilingual education and bilingualism ; 97).

## 10.1. SOCIOLINGUISTICS

877 Akindele, Femi Dele: Sesotho address forms. – *LO* 34/2, 2008, 3-15 | Electronic publ.

878 Bagwasi, Mompoloki Mmangaka: The effect of gender and age in Setswana greetings. – *SALALS* 30/1, 2012, 93-100.

879 Bagwasi, Mompoloki Mmangaka; Sunderland, Jane: Language, gender and age(ism) in Setswana. – (636), 53-78.

880 Beyer, Klaus: Urban language research in South Africa : achievements and challenges. – *SALALS* 32/2, 2014, 247-254.

881 Black, Steven P.: Narrating fragile stories about HIV/AIDS in South Africa. – *PrS* 4/3, 2013, 345-368.

882 Chebanne, Andy: Found and lost languages : survey of the past and current situation of Botswana ethic and linguistic communities. 48, 2016, 160-175 | E. ab.

883 Coetzee-Van Rooy, Susan: The language repertoire of a Venda home language speaker : reflections on methodology. – *LM* 47/2, 2016, 269-296 | E. ab.

884 Dowling, Tessa: 'Hola, my new cherry!' : two case studies of isiXhosa advertising in print media. – *SAfrJAL* 33/2, 2013, 173-188.

885 Duran, Daniel; Bruni, Jagoda; Dogil, Grzegorz; Roux, Justus C.: The social life of Setswana ejectives. – *Interspeech*, 2017, 3787-3791 | E. ab.

886 Dyers, Charlyn; Davids, Gaironeza: Post-modern 'languagers' : the effects of texting by university students on three South African languages. – *SALALS* 33/1, 2015, 21-30 | On Afrikaans, isiXhosa and Setswana.

887 Engelbrecht, Charlotte; Nkosi, Zethu; Wentzel, Dorien; Govender, Selverani; McInerney, Patricia: Nursing students' use of language in communicating with isiZulu speaking clients in clinical settings in KwaZulu-Natal. – *SAfrJAL* 28/2, 2008, 145-155.

888 Hanong Thetela, Puleng: Sex discourses and the construction of gender identity in Sesotho : a case study of police interviews of rape/sexual assault victims. – (636), 205-215.

889 Hurst, Ellen: Overview of the tsotsitaals of South Africa; their different base languages and common core lexical items. – (104), 169-184.

890 Jadezweni, Mhlobo W.; Mfazwe-Mojapelo, Lungelwa Rose: Achieving public acceptability of taboo words translated into isiXhosa. – (632), 201-223.

891 Kretzer, Michael M.: Variations of overt and covert language practices of educators in the North West Province : case study of the use of Setswana and Sesotho at primary and secondary schools. – *SAfrJAL* 36/1, 2016, 15-24.

892 Madadzhe, Richard Ndwayamato: Linguistic taboos in Tshivenda : communicating across epochs. – *SAfrJAL* 30/2, 2010, 108-191.

893 Madonsela, Stanley: A critical analysis of the use of code-switching in Nhlapho's novel *Imbali YemaNgcamane*. – *SAfrJAL* 34/2, 2014, 167-174.

894 Matlhaku, Keneilwe: Sociolinguistic factors in Setswana loanwords. – (632), 131-160.

895 Mkhize, Dumisile N.: Resources, mediators, and identities : home literacy practices of rural bilingual children. – *SALALS* 34/1, 2016, 43-55 | E. ab.

896 Msibi, Thabo: Homophobic language and linguistic resistance in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. – (636), 253-274.

897 Ndimande-Hlongwa, Nobuhle; Ndebele, Hloniphani: Digging deep into IsiZulu-English code-switching in a peri-urban context. – *LM* 45/2, 2014, 237-256 | E. ab.

898 Ndlovu, Sambulo: Thematic characterisation of Ndebele *izichothozo*. – *SAfrJAL* 35/1, 2015, 113-121.

899 Nhlekisana, Rosaleen O. B.: Language and gender in popular music in Botswana. – (636), 177-202.

900 Nkosi, Zinhle Primrose: IsiZulu as a vehicle towards teaching and conducting research in higher education : challenges and prospects. – *SAfrJAL* 37/2, 2017, 225-233 | E. ab.

901 Olivier, Jako: *Sesotho Online* : establishing an internet-based language knowledge community. – *SAfrJAL* 36/2, 2016, 141-152.

902 Posel, Dorrit; Zeller, Jochen: Home language and English language ability in South Africa : insights from new data. – *SALALS* 29/2, 2011, 115-126.

903 Rudwick, Stephanie Inge: Gendered linguistic choices among isiZulu-speaking women in contemporary South Africa. – (636), 233-251.

904 Rudwick, Stephanie Inge; Ntuli, Mduduzi: IsiNgqumo – introducing a gay Black South African linguistic variety. – *SALALS* 26/4, 2008, 445-456.

#### 10.1.1. LANGUAGE ATTITUDES AND SOCIAL IDENTITY

905 Banda, Felix; Peck, Amiena: Diversity and contested social identities in multilingual and multicultural contexts of the University of the Western Cape, South Africa. – *JMMD* 37/6, 2016, 576-588 | E. ab.

906 Beukes, Anne-Marie: 'The greasy pole of dehumanisation' : language and violence in South Africa. – *LM* 43/2, 2012, 128-145 | E. ab.

907 Black, Steven P.: Stigma and ideological constructions of the foreign : facing HIV/AIDS in South Africa. – *LiS* 42/5, 2013, 481-502 | E. ab.

908 Bristowe, Anthea; Oostendorp, Marcellyn; Anthonissen, Christine: Language and youth identity in a multilingual setting : a multimodal repertoire approach. – *SALALS* 32/2, 2014, 229-245.

909 Ditsele, Thabo: Attitudes held by Setswana L1-speaking university students toward their L1 : new variables. – *SAfJAL* 36/1, 2016, 1-13.

910 Ditsele, Thabo: Testing the impact of known variables on the attitudes held by Setswana L1-speaking university students towards their L1. – *Literator* 38/1, 2017, 15 p | E. & Afrikaans ab.

911 Ditsele, Thabo: Why not use Sepitori to enrich the vocabularies of Setswana and Sepedi? – *SALALS* 32/2, 2014, 215-228.

912 Hilton, Nanna Haug: University students' context-dependent conscious attitudes towards the official South African languages. – *SALALS* 28/2, 2010, 123-132.

913 [Kamwendo, Gregory Hankoni] Kamwendo, Gregory; Hlongwa, Nobuhle; Mkhize, Nhlanhla: On medium of instruction and African scholarship : the case of Isizulu at the University of Kwazulu-Natal in South Africa. – *CILP* 15/1, 2014, 75-89.

914 Letsholo, Rose M.; Mathlaku, Keneilwe: Attitudes of University of Botswana Faculty of Humanities students towards minority languages. – *SALALS* 35/3, 2017, 245-257 | E. ab.

915 Lombard, Ellen: Students' attitudes and preferences toward language of learning and teaching at the University of South Africa. – *LM* 48/3, 2017, 25-48 | E. ab.

916 Mbatha, T. A.: Ideologies shaping language choices : views of African students on Isizulu modules in higher education at the University of Kwazulu-Natal. – *NJAS* 25/2, 2016, 146-166 | E. ab.

917 Mojela, V. M.: Standardization or stigmatization? : challenges confronting lexicography and terminography in Sesotho sa Leboa. – *Lexikos* 18, 2008, 119-130 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

918 Moodley, Dianna Lynette: Bilingualism gridlocked at the University of KwaZulu-Natal. – *NJAS* 18/1, 2009, 22-27 | Electronic publ.

919 Msibi, Thabo; Rudwick, Stephanie Inge: Intersections of two isiZulu genderlects and the construction of *skesana* identities. – *SPILPLUS* 46, 2015, 51-66 | E. ab.

920 [Neethling, Siebert J.] Neethling, Bertie: Bynames as an expression of identity : a student profile at the University of the Western Cape. – (4), 23-38 | On Xhosa, Afrikaans and English names.

921 [Neethling, Siebert J.] Neethling, Bertie: Naming in the Muslim and Xhosa communities : a comparative analysis. – *SAfrJAL* 32/2, 2012, 161-166.

922 Nkosi, Zinhle Primrose: Postgraduate students' experiences and attitudes towards isiZulu as a medium of instruction at the University of KwaZulu-Natal. – *CILP* 15/3, 2014, 245-264.

923 Rudwick, Stephanie Inge; Parmegiani, Andrea: Divided loyalties : Zulu vis-à-vis English at the University of KwaZulu-Natal. – *LM* 44/3, 2013, 89-107 | E. ab.

924 Rudwick, Stephanie Inge: Shifting norms of linguistic and cultural respect : hybrid sociolinguistic Zulu identities. – *NJAS* 17/2, 2008, 152-174 | Electronic publ.

925 Rudwick, Stephanie Inge: Zulu Varietäten als Ausdruck unterschiedlicher Kulturansprüche und Geschlechterverhältnisse im heutigen Südafrika. – *ArOr* 79/1, 2011, 27-45 | E. ab.

926 Siziba, Gugulethu: Language and identity negotiations : an analysis of the experiences of Zimbabwean migrants in Johannesburg, South Africa. – *JACS* 26/2, 2014, 173-188 | E. & Zulu ab.

927 Stell, Gerald: Ethnicity and codeswitching : ethnic differences in grammatical and pragmatic patterns of codeswitching in the Free State. – *Pragmatics* 22/3, 2012, 477-499.

928 Thamaga-Chitja, J. M.; [Mbatha, T. A.] Mbatha, T.: Enablers and barriers to multilingualism in South African university classrooms. – *SALALS* 30/3, 2012, 339-346 | On Zulu and English.

929 Wildsmith-Cromarty, Rosemary; Conduah, Aloysius N.: Issues of identity and African unity surrounding the introduction of an exogenous African language, Swahili, at tertiary level in South Africa. – *IJBEB* 17/6, 2014, 638-653 | E. ab.

#### 10.1.2. LANGUAGE POLICY AND LANGUAGE PLANNING

930 Alberts, Mariëtta: National language and terminology policies – a South African perspective. – *Lexikos* 20, 2010, 599-620 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

931 Amtaika, Alexius: The power and authority of the dominant to name : a case study of selected Nyanja and isiZulu linguistic expressions regarding 'national assets'. – *JACS* 26/1, 2014, 99-115.

932 Beukes, Anne-Marie: Challenges for South Africa's medium-sized indigenous languages in higher education and research environments. – (117), 132-151.

933 Deumert, Ana: *Imbodela zamakhumsha* : reflections on standardization and destandardization. – *Multilingua* 29/3-4, 2010, 243-264 | Evidence from isiXhosa.

934 Hadebe, Vusumuzi: Communication policy and communication practice within the eThekwini Municipality. – *SAfrJAL* 29/2, 2009, 158-168.

935 Heugh, Kathleen: Harmonisation and South African languages : twentieth century debates of homogeneity and heterogeneity. – *LPol* 15/3, 2016, 235-255 | E. ab.

936 Hornberger, Nancy H.: On not taking language inequality for granted : Hymesian traces in ethnographic monitoring of South Africa's multilingual language policy. – *Multilingua* 33/5-6, 2014, 623-645.

937 Kadenge, Maxwell: "Where art thou Sesotho?" : exploring the linguistic landscape of Wits University. – *PerLinguam* 31/1, 2015, 30-45 | E. ab.

938 Kamwendo, Gregory Hankoni; Dlamini, Nosisi Percis: Language planning at a cross-border university in Swaziland : the case of teaching and learning, research and institutional administration. – *CILP* 17/3-4, 2016, 298-310 | E. ab.

939 Khumalo, Langa: Intellectualization through terminology development. – *Lexikos* 27, 2017, 252-264 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

940 Mabuto, Morgen Peter; Ndlovu, Sambulo: Teaching under-resourced languages : an evaluation of Great Zimbabwe University's initiatives in the teaching of Tshivenda and Xichangana. – *SAfrJAL* 34/1, 2014, 1-8.

941 Masoke-Kadenge, Emure; Kadenge, Maxwell: 'Declaration without implementation' : an investigation into the progress made and challenges faced in implementing the Wits language policy. – *LM* 44/3, 2013, 33-50 | E. ab.

942 Mesthrie, Rajend: Necessary versus sufficient conditions for using new languages in South African higher education : a linguistic appraisal. – *JMMD* 29/4, 2008, 325-340 | On the developing of Xhosa as a scientific language.

943 Mgqwashu, Emmanuel Mfanafuthi: On developing academic literacy in the mother tongue for epistemological access : the role of isiZulu as the LoLT in a South African University. – *CILP* 15/1, 2014, 90-103.

944 Mokibelo, Eureka B.: Communication strategies in primary schools in Botswana : interventions using cooks, teacher aides and learners. – *CILP* 17/2, 2016, 179-190 | E. ab.

945 Mutasa, Davie E.: Language policy implementation in South African universities vis-a-vis the speakers of indigenous African languages' perception. – *PerLinguam* 31/1, 2015, 46-59 | E. ab.

946 Mutasa, Davie E.: Multilingual education in South African universities : a possibility or delusion? – *SAfrJAL* 34/1, 2014, 9-20.

947 Ndlovu, Eventhough: Mother tongue education in the official minority languages in Zimbabwe. – *SAfrJAL* 31/2, 2011, 229-242 | On Venda, Tonga, Nambya, Kalanga, Sotho and Shangani.

948 Ndlovu, Eventhough: Mother-tongue education in Venda : an ethno-linguistic vitality critique. – *LM* 46/3, 2015, 364-388 | E. ab.

949 [Neethling, Siebert J] Neethling, Bertie: Xhosa as medium of instruction in Higher Education : pie in the sky? – *PerLinguam* 26/1, 2010, 61-73 | E. ab.

950 Ngcobo, Sandiso: The struggle to maintain identity in higher education among Zulu-speaking students. – *IJBEB* 17/6, 2014, 695-713 | E. ab.

951 Phaahla, Pinkie: Economics of languages : the interplay between language planning and policy, and language practice in South Africa. – *SAfrJAL* 35/2, 2015, 181-188.

952 Pillay, Venitha; Yu, Ke: Multilingualism at South African universities : a quiet storm. – *SALALS* 33/4, 2015, 439-452.

953 Plessis, Theodorus du: Language planning from below : the case of the Xhariep District of the Free State Province. – *CILP* 11/2, 2010, 130-151.

954 Plessis, Theodorus du: The role of language policy in linguistic landscape changes in a rural area of the Free State Province of South Africa. – *LM* 43/2, 2012, 263-282 | E. ab.

955 Plessis, Theodorus du: The South African Language Rights Monitor and information on language policy and planning in South Africa. – *LM* 45/3, 2014, 378-400 | E. ab.

956 Pretorius, Elizabeth J.: Failure to launch : matching language policy with literacy accomplishment in South African schools. – *IJSL* 234, 2015, 47-76.

957 Ralarala, Monwabisi Knowledge: A compromise of rights, rights of language and rights to a language in Eugene Terre'Blanche's (ET) trial within a trial : evidence lost in translation. – *SPIL* 41, 2012, 55-70 | E. ab.

958 Ranamane, Tlhabane D.: The contribution of the missionaries to the development of Setswana as a written language. – *SAfrJAL* 32/1, 2012, 27-33.

959 Rudwick, Stephanie Inge: Compulsory African language learning at a South African university. – *LPLP* 41/2, 2017, 115-135 | E., Zulu & Esperanto ab.

960 Turner, Noleen S.; Wildsmith-Cromarty, Rosemary: Challenges to the implementation of bilingual/multilingual language policies at tertiary institutions in South Africa (1995–2012). – *LM* 45/3, 2014, 295-312 | E. ab.

961 [Webb, Victor] Webb, Vic: Educators' attitudes towards the role of isi-Zulu in education : additive rather than exclusive. – *SALALS* 31/2, 2013, 185-205.

#### 10.1.4. LANGUAGE LOSS AND MAINTENANCE

962 Deumert, Ana: Xhosa in town (revisited) : space, place and language. – *IJSL* 22/2, 2013, 51-75.

963 Möller, Jana; Le Roux, Beth: Implementing constitutional language provisions through the Indigenous Language Publishing Programme. – *SAfrJAL* 37/2, 2017, 203-209 | E. ab.

964 Yu, Ke; Dumisa, Siphesihle: Community support : the missing link in indigenous language promotion in South Africa? – *PerLinguam* 31/1, 2015, 60-73 | E. ab.

#### 10.2. MULTILINGUALISM, LANGUAGE CONTACT

965 Bylund, Emanuel: *Unomathotholo* or *i-radio*? : factors predicting the use of English loanwords among L1 isiXhosa–L2 English bilinguals. – *JMMD* 35/2, 2014, 105-120.

#### 10.2.1. MULTILINGUALISM

966 Anthonissen, Christine: Managing linguistic diversity in a South African HIV/AIDS day clinic. – (132), 107-139 | E. ab.

967 Dowling, Tessa: Translated for the dogs : language use in Cape Town signage. – *LM* 43/2, 2012, 240-262 | E. ab.

968 Dowling, Tessa: 'Welcome to proper mall' : the language on signs in Diepsloot, Johannesburg. – *SAfrJAL* 34/1, 2014, 87-95.

969 Johanson Botha, Liz: *Language learning, power, race and identity : white men, black language*. – Bristol : Multilingual Matters, 2015. – xxv, 262 p. – (Encounters ; 4).

970 Kaschula, Russell H.; Maseko, Pamela; Dalvit, Lorenzo; Mapi, Thandeka; Nelani, Linda; Nosilela, Bulelwa; Sam, Msindisi: An intercultural approach to implementing multilingualism at Rhodes University, South Africa. – *SPILPLUS* 39, 2009, 45-61.

971 Ndimande-Hlongwa, Nobuhle; Ndebele, Hloniphani: Embracing African languages as indispensable resources through the promotion of multilingualism. – *PerLinguam* 33/1, 2017, 67-82 | E. ab.

972 Phaahla, Pinkie: Multilingualism in a global village : what is the future of a local language (e.g. Northern Sotho) in an increasingly globalized world? – *SAfrJAL* 30/1, 2010, 52-65.

973 Posel, Dorrit; Zeller, Jochen: Language shift or increased bilingualism in South Africa : evidence from census data. – *JMMD* 37/4, 2016, 357-370 | E. ab.

974 Sobane, Konsoang: Multilingual practices and language scaling in behavioural change communication on HIV/AIDS in Lesotho : the case of Phela health and development communications. – *SPIPLUS* 41, 2012, 107-115 | E. ab.

#### 10.2.3. LANGUAGE CONTACT

975 Andrason, Alexander: The “exotic” nature of ideophones : from Khoekhoe to Xhosa. – *SPIL* 48, 2017, 139-150 | E. ab.

976 Ditsèle, Thabo; Mann, Charles C.: Language contact in African urban settings : the case of Sepitori in Tshwane. – *SAfrJAL* 34/2, 2014, 159-165 | Sepitori is a mixed lg. based on Sepedi and Setswana.

977 Mahlangu, K. S.: Language contact and linguistic change : the case of Afrikaans and English influence on isiNdebele. – *SAfrJAL* 36/1, 2016, 25-31.

978 Maimane, Ketlalemang; Mathonsi, Nhlanhla: Phonological adaptations of foreign names into Sesotho : anthroponyms and toponyms. – *NAfr* 31/2, 2017, 183-190 | E. ab.

979 Mesthrie, Rajend: Pidginization versus second language acquisition : insights from basilang and mesolang varieties of Zulu as a second language. – (50), 323-342 | E. ab.

980 Ngcobo, Mtholeni N: Loan words classification in isiZulu : the need for a sociolinguistic approach. – *LM* 44/1, 2013, 21-38 | E. ab.

981 Pakendorf, Brigitte; Gunnink, Hilde; Sands, Bonny; Bostoen, Koen: Prehistoric Bantu-Khoisan language contact : a cross-disciplinary approach. – *LgDC* 7/1, 2017, 1-46 | E. ab.

982 Simango, Sylvester Ron: “*Amaphi ama*-subjects *eniwa-enjoy-ayo esikolweni?*” : code-switching and language practices among bilingual learners in the Eastern Cape. – *IJSL* 234, 2015, 77-91.

983 Simango, Silvester Ron: When English meets isiXhosa in the clause : an exploration into the grammar of code-switching. – *SALALS* 29/2, 2011, 127-134.

984 Zsiga, Elizabeth C.; Boyer, One Tlale: Sebirwa in contact with Setswana : a natural experiment in learning an unnatural alternation. – (633), 343-366 | E. ab.

#### 10.4. DIALECTOLOGY

985 Mulaudzi, Phalandwa Abraham: Cross-border language varieties : the case of Tshilembethu and Lembethu/ Chilembethu and their relationship with Tshivenda. – *SALALS* 29/4, 2011, 435-446.

#### 11. COMPARATIVE LINGUISTICS

986 Andrason, Alexander; Visser, Marianna W.: Cognate objects of weather verbs in African languages of South Africa : from synchronic variation to a grammaticalization path. – *SPIL* 48, 2017, 151-160 | E. ab.

987 Ma, Xiuji; Simango, Silvester Ron: Encoding present situations in Mandarin Chinese and isiXhosa : a comparative study. – *SPIL* 43, 2014, 119-135 | E. ab.

#### 11.1. HISTORICAL LINGUISTICS AND LANGUAGE CHANGE

988 Batibo, Herman M.: The origin and evolution of Setswana culture : a linguistic account. 48, 2016, 134-149 | E. ab.

#### 11.2. LINGUISTIC TYPOLOGY, UNIVERSALS OF LANGUAGE

989 *The conjoint/disjoint alternation in Bantu* / Ed. by Jenneke van der Wal and Larry M. Hyman. – Berlin : De Gruyter Mouton, 2017. – x, 458 p. – (Trends in linguistics. Studies and monographs ; 301).

#### 12. MATHEMATICAL AND COMPUTATIONAL LINGUISTICS

990 Faaß, Gertrud; Bosch, Sonja E.; Taljard, Elsabé: Towards a part-of-speech ontology : encoding morphemic units of two South African Bantu languages. – *NJAS* 21/3, 2012, 118-140 | Electronic publ.

991 Taljard, Elsabé; Faaß, Gertrud; Bosch, Sonja E.: Implementation of a part-of-speech ontology : morphemic units of Bantu languages. – *NJAS* 24/2, 2015, 146-168 | E. ab.

#### 12.2.1. CORPUS LINGUISTICS

992 Bosch, Sonja E.; Pretorius, Laurette: Towards Zulu corpus clean-up, lexicon development and corpus annotation by means of computational morphological analysis. – *SAfJAL* 31/1, 2011, 138-158.

993 Ndhlovu, Ketiwe: Using ParaConc to extract bilingual terminology from parallel corpora : a case of English and Ndebele. – *Literator* 37/2, 2016, 12 p | E. & Afrikaans ab.

994 Niekerk, Daniel van; Heerden, Charl van; Davel, Marelief; Kleynhans, Neil; Kjartansson, Oddur; Jansche, Martin; Ha, Linne: Rapid development of TTS corpora for four South African languages. – *Interspeech*, 2017, 2178-2182 | Afrikaans, isiXhosa, Sesotho and Setswana | E. ab.

995 Taljard, Elsabé; Faaß, Gertrud; Heid, Ulrich; Prinsloo, D. J.: On the development of a tagset for Northern Sotho with special reference to the issue of standardisation. – *Literator* 29/1, 2008, 111-137 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

#### 12.3. COMPUTATIONAL LINGUISTICS

996 Anderson, Winston N.; Kotzé, Albert E.: Verbal extension sequencing : an examination from a computational perspective. – *Literator* 29/1, 2008, 43-63 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

997 Bosch, Sonja E.; Fellbaum, Christiane; Pala, Karel: Derivational relations in English, Czech and Zulu wordnets. – *Literator* 29/1, 2008, 139-162 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

998 Bosch, Sonja E.; Griesel, Marissa: Strategies for building wordnets for under-resourced languages : the case of African languages. – *Literator* 38/1, 2017, 12 p. | E. & Afrikaans ab.

999 Bosch, Sonja E.; Pretorius, Laurette; Fleisch, Axel: Experimental bootstrapping of morphological analysers for Nguni languages. – *NJAS* 17/2, 2008, 66-88 | Electronic publ.

1000 Faaß, Gertrud; Prinsloo, D. J.: A computational implementation of the Northern Sotho infinitive. – *SAfJAL* 31/2, 2011, 281-301.

1001 Glarner, Thomas; Boenninghoff, Benedikt; Walter, Oliver; Haeb-Umbach, Reinhold: Leveraging text data for word segmentation for underresourced languages. – *Interspeech*, 2017, 2143-2147 | Experiments with Xitsonga and English | E. ab.

1002 Heid, Ulrich; Prinsloo, D.J.; Faaß, Gertrud; Taljard, Elsaabé: Designing a noun guesser for part of speech tagging in Northern Sotho. – *SAfrJAL* 29/1, 2009, 1-19.

1003 Pretorius, Laurette; Bosch, Sonja E.: Containing overgeneration in Zulu computational morphology. – *SALALS* 26/2, 2008, 209-216.

1004 Pretorius, Laurette; Viljoen, Biffie; Berg, Ansu; Pretorius, Rigardt: Tswana finite state tokenisation. – *LRE* 49/4, 2015, 831-856 | E. ab.

1005 Pretorius, Laurette; Viljoen, Biffie; Pretorius, Rigardt; Berg, Ansu: Towards a computational morphological analysis of Setswana compounds. – *Literotor* 29/1, 2008, 1-20 | E. & Afrikaans ab.

1006 Prinsloo, D. J.; Faaß, Gertrud; Taljard, Elsaabé; Heid, Ulrich: Designing a verb guesser for part of speech tagging in Northern Sotho. – *SALALS* 26/2, 2008, 185-196.

1007 Schluenz, Georg I.; Dlamini, Nkosikhona; Krüger, Rynhardt P.: Part-of-speech tagging and chunking in text-to-speech synthesis for South African languages. – *Interspeech*, 2016, 3554-3558 | E. ab.

1008 Westhuizen, Ewald van der; Niesler, Thomas: Synthesising isiZulu-English code-switch bigrams using word embeddings. – *Interspeech*, 2017, 72-76 | E. ab.

### 13.1. ANTHROPOONYMY

1009 Bagwasi, Mompoloki Mmangaka: The influence of multilingualism, Christianity and education in the formation of Bakalanga identity. – *IJEL* 2/2, 2012, 122-131.

1010 Koopman, Adrian: Uniqueness in the Zulu anthroponymic system. – *Onoma* 44, 2009 [2011], 69-91 | E., G. & Fr. ab.

1011 Mandende, Itani Peter: *A study of Tshivenda personal names*. – Pretoria : Univ. of South Africa, 2009. – x, 222 p. | Diss. at Univ. of South Africa, June 2009.

1012 Matlosa, Lits'episo: Sesotho orthography called into question : the case of some Sesotho personal names. – *NAfr* 31/1, 2017, 51-58 | E. ab.

1013 [Neethling, Siebert J.] Neethling, Bertie: Family names among the Xhosa of South Africa. – *Onoma* 44, 2009 [2011], 107-128 | E., G. & Fr. ab.

1014 [Neethling, Siebert J.] Neethling, Bertie: Xhosa first names : a dual identity in harmony or in conflict? – *Names* 56/1, 2008, 32-38.

1015 [Neethling, Siebert J.] Neethling, Bertie: Xhosa onomastics as part of indigenous knowledge systems (IKS). – *Names* 62/4, 2014, 218-228.

1016 Ngubane, Sihawukele E.: The socio-cultural and linguistic implications of Zulu names. – *SAfJAL* 33/2, 2013, 165-172.

1017 Ngubane, Sihawukele E.; Thabethe, Nompumelelo: Shifts and continuities in Zulu personal naming practices. – *Literator* 34/1, 2013, 7 p. | E. & Afrikaans ab.

1018 Zulu, Nogwaja S.; Makoae, Aloysia Sebueng: Analysis of the metaphorical expression *bitsolebe ke seromo* in early Sesotho novels. – *NAfr* 31/1, 2017, 29-37 | E. ab.

### 13.2. TOPOONYMY

1019 Koopman, Adrian: The names and the naming of Durban. – *Onoma* 42, 2007 (2010), 73-88 | E. Fr. & G. ab.

1020 Koopman, Adrian: The post-colonial identity of Durban. – *OSLa* 4/2, 2012, 133-159 | Electronic publ.

1021 [Meiring, Babs] Meiring, Barbara A.: Aspects of violence reflected in South African geographical names. – *Werkwinkel* 5/1, 2010, 95-112 | E. ab.

1022 Raper, Peter E.: The component Kwa- in Zulu placenames derived from Khoisan. – *Names* 57/3, 2009, 127-140.

1023 Raper, Peter E.: Descriptive Zulu placenames of San origin. – *Names* 57/1, 2009, 3-16.

### 13.3. NAME STUDIES OTHER THAN ANTHROPOONYMY AND TOPOONYMY

1024 Babane, Morris T.; Chauke, Mkhacani T.: The sociocultural aspects of Xitsonga dog names. – *NAfr* 31/1, 2017, 59-67 | E. ab.

1025 Koopman, Adrian: The toponymic status of Zulu school and shop names. – *Onoma* 44, 2009 [2011], 55-67 | E. Fr. & G. ab.

1026 Koopman, Adrian: Zulu cattle names. – *BNF* 50/3-4, 2015, 319-333.

## 3. Khoisan

1027 Besten, Hans den: The Dutch pidgins of the Old Cape colony. – (509), 95-121 | Translation of LB 1992, 22932.

1028 *Beyond 'Khoisan': historical relations in the Kalahari Basin* / Ed. by Tom Güldemann ;Anne-Maria Fehn. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2014. – xii, 331 p. – (Current issues in linguistic theory ; 330).

1029 Blench, Roger M.: Was there an interchange between Cushitic pastoralists and Khoisan speakers in the prehistory of Southern Africa and how this can be detected? – *SUGIA* 20, 2009, 31-49.

1030 Chebanne, Andy; Dlali, Mawande: Tsua lexical borrowing from Setswana. – *SAfriJAL* 37/1, 2017, 99-107 | E. ab.

1031 Chebanne, Andy: The !Xóö-English-Setswana Trilingual Dictionary in preparation : an experience. – (51), 71-88.

1032 Haacke, Wilfried H. G.; Eiseb, Eliphas; Gericke, Christine: *Khoekhoegowab-Afrikaans : glossarium = Afrikaans-Khoekhoegowab : mîdi saogub.* – Windhoek, Namibia : Macmillan Education Namibia, 2010. – vii, 407 p.

1033 Haacke, Wilfried H. G.: Lexical borrowing by Khoekhoegowab from Cape Dutch and Afrikaans. – *SPIPLUS* 47, 2015, 59-74 | E. ab.

1034 Haacke, Wilfried H. G.: *Nama* als Sprachbennennung in der Kolonalinguistik Deutsch-Südwestafrikas : zwischen Endonym und Exonym. – (52), 139-160.

1035 Haacke, Wilfried H. G.: Verb serialisation in northern dialects of Khoekhoegowab : convergence or divergence? – (1028), 125-152.

1036 Heine, Bernd; König, Christa: Observations on observations : on typological features of hunter-gatherer languages. – (16), 127-143 | On Akie, !Xun, !|Ani, Kalenjin and Nama | E. ab.

1037 Ketsi, Kavila Lititinga; Cassanga, Antonio Luciano; Cativa, Manuel; Domingas, Helena; Tchilunda, Fernando: *Ortografia padrão unificada da língua !Xun : orthografia padrão unificada das língua Khoi e San (África do Sul, Angola, Botswana e Namibia)* / António Ndalo (falante mais velho). – Cape Town : CASAS, 2014. – iii, 24 p. – (Monograph series [CASAS] ; 259) | [Unified standard spelling of the !Xun language : unified standard spelling of the Khoi and San languages (South Africa, Angola, Botswana and Namibia)].

1038 McGranaghan, Mark: 'My name did float along the road' : naming practices and |Xam Bushman identities in the 19th-century Karoo (South Africa). – *AfrS* 74/3, 2015, 270-289.

1039 Raper, Peter E.: Tshwane, a San name for Pretoria, South Africa. – *Names* 56/4, 2008, 221-230.

1040 Seidel, A.: *Nama (Sprache der Nama-Hottentotten) : kurzgefaßte Grammatik, analysierte Lesestücke nebst einem nama-deutschen und deutsch-nama Wörterbuch.* – München : LINCOM Europa, 2011. – 68 p. – (LINCOM gramatica ; 103) | Originally publ. in Vienna, 1892.

1041 *Southern African Khoisan kinship systems* / Alan Barnard ; Gertrud Boden (eds.). – Köln : Köppe, 2014. – 301 p. – (Quellen zur Khoian-Forschung = Researcin Khoisan studies ; 30) | References, p. 281-301.

1042 Vossen, Rainer: Patterns of linguistic convergence in the Khoe-speaking area of Southern Africa. – (13), 189-200.

## Pidgins and Creoles

1043 *Deconstructing creole* / Ed. by Umberto Ansaldi ; Stephen Matthews ; Lisa Lim. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2007. – xi, 290 p. – (Typological studies in language ; 73).

1044 *Pidgins and creoles beyond Africa-Europe encounters* / Ed. by Isabelle Buchstaller ; Anders Holmberg ; Mohammad Almoaily. – Amsterdam : Benjamins, 2014. – v, 178 p. – (Creole language library ; 47).

1045 Roberge, Paul T.: Foundations of a “sane creoleology”. – *Diachronica* 29/3, 2012, 359-376 | Rev. art. of 37.

### 1. Romance lexifier pidgins and creoles

1046 Besten, Hans den: Creole Portuguese in South Africa : Malayo- or Indo-Portuguese? – (509), 289-312 | Transl. of 1047.

1047 Besten, Hans den: Kreolportugiesisch in Südafrika : Malaio- oder Indoportugiesisch? – (1), 317-351.

### 2. English lexifier pidgins and creoles

1048 Mesthrie, Rajend: English tsotsitaals? : an analysis of two written texts in Surfspeak and South African Indian English slang. – *SALALS* 32/2, 2014, 173-183.

### 3. Pidgins and creoles with lexifiers other than Romance and English

1049 Besten, Hans den: On the “verbal suffix” -um of Cape Dutch Pidgin : morphosyntax, pronunciation and origin. – (509), 123-132 | First publ. in 42.

1050 Besten, Hans den: What we seem to know about the lexicon of Early Cape Dutch Pidgin (and always were afraid to question). – (51), 33-48.

1051 Mesthrie, Rajend: How non-Indo-European is Fanakalo pidgin? : selected understudied structures in a Bantu-lexified pidgin with Germanic substrates. – (1044), 85-100.

1052 Stell, Gerald: Social mobility as a factor in restructuring : Black Cape Dutch in perspective. – *JPCl* 32/1, 2017, 104-137 | E. ab.

## Sign languages

### 2. Individual sign languages (except ASL)

1053 Baker, Anne Edith: Poetry in South African Sign Language : what is different? – *SPIL* 48, 2017, 87-92 | E. ab.

1054 Barros, Courtney de; Siebörger, Ian: Sentential negation in South African Sign Language : a case study. – *Literotor* 37/2, 2016, 13 p | E. & Afrikaans ab.

1055 Huddlestone, Kate: A preliminary look at negative constructions in South African Sign Language : question-answer clauses. – *SPIL* 48, 2017, 93-104 | E. ab.

1056 Köhlo, Mikhaela D. K.; Siebörger, Ian; Bennett, William G.: A perfect end : a study of syllable codas in South African Sign Language. – *SPILPLUS* 52, 2017, 127-156 | E. ab.

1057 Morgan, Ruth; Glaser, Meryl; Magongwa, Lucas: Constructing and rolling out the new South African Sign Language (SASL) curriculum : reflexive critique. – *PerLinguam* 32/2, 2016, 15-29 | E. ab.

1058 Reagan, Timothy G.: South African Sign Language and language-in-education policy in South Africa. – *SPIL* 38, 2008, 165-190.

1059 Stander, Marga; McIlroy, Guy: Language and culture in the Deaf community : a case study in a South African special school. – *PerLinguam* 33/1, 2017, 83-99 | E. ab.



## INDEX OF NAMES

This index contains the names of all authors, editors, etc., represented in the main part of this volume. Also included are names of persons who are the main subject of a publication. Names are listed alphabetically by surname.

Aardt, Caro A. van 482  
Aboh, Enoch Oladé 5  
Abongdia, Jane-Francis 112  
Adams, Nikki B. 32  
Adendorff, Ralph D. 340, 553, 556, 557  
Akindele, Femi Dele 877  
Alberts, Mariëtta 331, 422-424, 820, 930  
Alexander, Neville 116  
Alloway, Tracy 561  
Allwood, Jens 840  
Almoaily, Mohammad 1044  
Álvarez-Mosquera, Pedro 593  
Amorós Negre, Carla 11  
Amtaika, Alexius 931  
Anderson, Stephen R. 74  
Anderson, Winston N. 996  
Andrason, Alexander 705, 741, 975, 986  
Angermeyer, Philipp Sebastian 50  
Annas, Rolf 153  
Ansaldi, Umberto 1043  
Anthonissen, Christine 313, 353, 392, 908, 966  
Antia, Bassey Edem 594  
Antonites, Alex 173  
Apfelbaum, Birgit 132  
Archer, Brent 679  
Arends, Jacques 37  
Atanga, Lilian Lem 636  
Athanasopoulos, Panos 301, 562, 855  
Audring, Jenny 170  
Avelar, Juanito cf. Avelar, Juanito  
Ornelas de Avelar, Juanito Ornelas de 143  
Babane, Morris T. 1024  
Bagwasi, Mompoloki Mmangaka 108, 837, 878, 879, 1009  
Baker, Anne Edith 706, 1053  
Ball, Liezl H. 258  
Ball, Martin J. 69  
Banda, Felix 602, 634, 905  
Bang, Arina 354  
Barbiers, Sjef 79  
Barkhuizen, Gary P. 460  
Barnard, Alan J. 1041  
Barnard, E. 142  
Barnard, Etienne 664, 671, 688, 703  
Barnes, Lawrie A. 151  
Barris, Ken 632  
Barros, Courtney de 1054  
Bartlett, Tom 88  
Bateman, Nicoleta 70  
Batibo, Herman M. 680, 988  
Beddor, Patricia Speeter 177  
Bednarczuk, Leszek 15  
Bekker, Ian 355, 526, 527, 529, 531, 572, 577, 614  
Bekker, Simon 457

## INDEX OF NAMES

Bennett, William G. 181, 645, 654, 681, 692, 1056  
Bennis, Hans 170  
Berendt, Erich A. 87  
Berg, Ansu 773, 1004, 1005  
Berg, Margot C. van den 37  
Berg, Ria van den 309  
Bergenholtz, Henning 38, 281  
Bergerson, Jeremy 293  
Bergh, Luna 311  
Berghoff, Robyn 203  
Berson, Sarah 24  
Best, Catherine T. 71  
Besten, Hans den 60-62, 163, 182, 190, 191, 202, 204-209, 489, 490, 509, 1027, 1046, 1047, 1049, 1050  
Beukema, Frits 170  
Beukes, Anne-Marie 109, 295, 393, 906, 932  
Beyer, Herman L. 84, 282, 416  
Beyer, Klaus 880  
Bezuidenhout, Roof 463  
Bezza Tesfaw Ayalew 30  
Bhatia, Tej K. 128  
Biberauer, Theresa 34, 210-212, 305, 491-493, 568  
Black, Steven P. 881, 907  
Blench, Roger M. 1029  
Blignaut, Joline 356  
Block, Trevor 23  
Blommaert, Jan 385  
Boakye, Naomi 92  
Bock, Zannie 357, 394  
Boden, Gertrud 1041  
Boenninghoff, Benedikt 1001  
Boersma, Piter 20  
Bokamba, Eyamba G. 30  
Bombien, Lasse 6  
Boogaart, Ronny 298  
Booij, Geert E. 170  
Booysen, Lara 346  
Bornman, Elirea 395-397  
Bosch, Sonja E. 830, 990-992, 997-999, 1003  
Bosire, Mokaya 9  
Bosman, Nerina 165, 259, 260, 273, 300, 303  
Bostoen, Koen 981  
Botha, G. 142  
Botha, Melodi 173  
Botha, Morné 213  
Botha, Willem F. 261, 274-278, 280  
Botha, Willem J. 43  
Botha, Yolande 536  
Bothma, Theo J. D. 258, 281, 791  
Botma, Bert 72  
Bouavichith, Dominique 177  
Bowern, Claire 74  
Boyer, One Tlale 665, 984  
Braeckeveldt, Charlotte 216  
Bratkievich, Alex 24  
Brato, Thorsten 629  
Braunmüller, Kurt 19  
Braver, Aaron 692  
Bredenkamp, Francois 477  
Breed, Adri 172, 192-194, 214, 215, 306, 307, 320, 339, 482, 488  
Breed, Catharina Adriana cf. Breed, Adri  
Breitbarth, Anne 7  
Brenzinger, Matthias 16, 28, 635  
Bretxa, Vanessa 117  
Brink, Nina 339  
Brisard, Frank 214, 215  
Bristowe, Anthea 908  
Broekhuis, Hans 170  
Bromberger, Sylvain 39  
Brookes, Heather 358, 398, 409  
Brozbă, Gabriela 525  
Bruhn, Daniel 24  
Bruni, Jagoda 885  
Brylla, Eva 4  
Buchstaller, Isabelle 1044  
Buell, Leston Chandler 742-745, 755  
Burger, Chris R. 608  
Burger, Willie 41  
Burheni, Clementinah 676  
Burkholder, Ross 746  
Buschfeld, Sarah 570, 609  
Buthelezi, Mthuli 367  
Butler, Anneke 197  
Bylund, Emanuel 135, 301, 562, 855, 965  
Cage, Ken 399

Cakata, Zethu 110  
 Callies, Marcus 63, 548  
 Caluwe, Johan De 42  
 Camargos, Quesler  
     Fagundes 772  
 Campbell, Amy 24  
 Canepari, Luciano 483,  
     484  
 Cardoso, Hugo C. 37  
 Carinus, Matty 348  
 Carney, Terrence R. 304  
 Carstens, Adelia 67  
 Carstens, Vicki May  
     747, 748  
 Carstens, Wannie A. M.  
     165, 172, 175, 309, 359,  
     425, 466, 494, 505  
 Caspers, Johanneke 68  
 Cassanga, Antonio  
     Luciano 1037  
 Cathcart, Chundra  
     Aroo 26  
 Cativa, Manuel 1037  
 Cerini, Marco 483, 484  
 Chan, Queenie 23  
 Chariatte, Nadine 360,  
     595  
 Chauke, Mkhacani T.  
     1024  
 Chebanne, Andy 737,  
     882, 1030, 1031  
 Chen, I-Hsuan 26  
 Chen, Yiya 68, 660  
 Cheng, Lisa Lai-Shen  
     749-752  
 Cheng, Tanie 23  
 Chevalier, Alida 583,  
     599, 622  
 Chimhundu, Herbert 40  
 Choi, Jaehoon 22  
 Chokoe, Sekgaila 854  
 Chruszczewski, Piotr P.  
     139  
 Cloete, Aletta E. 277  
 Cockcroft, Kate 561  
 Coertze, Salome 608  
 Coetzee, Andries W. 177,  
     495, 673  
 Coetzee, Anna E. 361  
 Coetzee-Van Rooy,  
     Susan 400, 467, 468,  
     596, 607, 883  
 Colleman, Timothy  
     216, 511  
 Coller, Hennie P. van  
     426  
 Colletta, Jean-Marc 872  
 Colliander, Peter 2  
 Collins, James 578  
 Collins, Peter C. 626  
 Conacher, Jean E. 95  
 Conduah, Aloysius N.  
     929  
 Connell, Bruce 183  
 Conradie, C. Jac 41, 217,  
     283, 308, 314, 315, 361,  
     427, 496-500  
 Conradie, Marthinus  
     458  
 Conradie, Simone 195,  
     343, 344, 608, 875  
 Cook, Toni 687, 693,  
     694  
 Cornelius, Eleanor 111,  
     296, 428  
 Corver, Norbert 170,  
     218, 345  
 Craft, Justin T. 177  
 Creissels, Denis 695,  
     707, 753, 754  
 Cremers, Crit 170  
 Cutler, Cecelia A. 50  
 Cyrino, Sonia 143  
 Daelemans, Walter  
     27, 521  
 Dalvit, Lorenzo 970  
 Dangor, Suleman E. 501  
 Darski, Józef Paweł 2  
 Davel, Marelle 994  
 Davids, Achmat 501  
 Davids, Gaironesa 886  
 Degenhardt, Ruth 1  
 Dekoke, Taty 93  
 Demuth, Katherine 863,  
     866-868  
 Dernison, Roderik 170  
 Deumert, Ana 61, 401,  
     402, 579, 610, 611, 615,  
     933, 962  
 Devos, Magda 42  
 Dewein, Barbara 52  
 Deyi, Somikazi 708  
 Diemer, Maxine 654,  
     856  
 Dikken, Marcel den 170  
 Ditsele, Thabo 351, 909-  
     911, 976  
 Dlali, Mawande 705,  
     802, 838, 1030  
 Dlamini, Nkosikhona  
     1007  
 Dlamini, Nosisi Percis  
     938  
 Doel, Rias van den 412  
 Dogil, Grzegorz 885  
 Doke, Clement M. 655  
 Domingas, Helena 1037  
 Dowling, Tessa 648,  
     708, 718, 864, 884,  
     967, 968

## INDEX OF NAMES

Downing, Laura J. 637,  
660, 682, 749-752

Dreu, Merijn de 755

Dreu, Simon de 743

Drummond, Andrew  
603

Du Preez, Erica S. 322

Duarte, Fábio Bonfim  
756, 772

Dube, Progress 696, 717

Duke, Janet 478

Duke, Lalia 568

Dulm, Ondene van 316

Dumisa, Siphesihle  
964

Dunne, Timothy 622

Duran, Daniel 885

Dyers, Charlyn 112, 362,  
461, 594, 612, 886

Dyk, Siebren 170

Dyubhele, Fumanekile  
818

Ebongue, Augustin  
Emmanuel 644

Edwards, Viv K. 113

Ehlers, Leandra 327

Eiseb, Eliphias 1032

Eisenbeiß, Sonja 857

Ekanjume, Beatrice 21

Eksteen, L. C. 268, 269

Ellece, Sibonile Edith  
636

Ellis, Carla 195

Elordieta Alcibar,  
Gorka 29

Elsness, Johan 569

Emsley, Robin 350

Engelbrecht, Alta 469

Engelbrecht, Charlotte  
887

Engelbrecht, Salomé  
348

Escamilla, Ramon 24

Evans, Richard 94

Ezawa, Kennosuke 2

Faaß, Gertrud 990, 991,  
995, 1000, 1002, 1006

Fairhurst, Melanie 554

Fakude, Pheladi Florina  
858

Fehn, Anne-Maria 28,  
1028

Feinauer, A. E. 263

Feinauer, Ilse 216, 219,  
264, 265

Fellbaum, Christiane  
997

Féral, Carole de 47, 48

Fernández Juncal,  
Carmen 11

Ferreira, Camille 242

Ferreira, Dina 429

Ferreira-Meyers, Karen  
Aline

Françoise 152

Finlayson, Rosalie 114

Finley, Gregory 26

Finney, Kelli 23

Flecken, Monique 156

Fleisch, Axel 999

Fontaine, Lise 88

Foolen, Ad 298

Fortuin, Egbert 157

Fouché, Nadine 309

Fourie, Hanelle 174,  
277, 284

Fourie, Yolande 346

Fourie Blair, Hanelle cf.

Fourie, Hanelle

Francken, Eep 33, 363

Frota, Sónia 29

Fuchs, Robert 563

Gabriel, Christoph 19

Gabriels, B. P. D. 274-277

Galves, Charlotte 143

Gass, Kate M. van 470

Geeraerts, Dirk 158

Gelderken, Elly van 8

Geleyn, Tim 511

Genis, René M. 44

Geraghty, Barbara 95

Gericke, Christine 1032

Gibson, Hannah 757

Giliomee, Hermann 430

Giovine, Allegra 24

Glarner, Thomas 1001

Glaser, Meryl 1057

Glorie, Ingrid 364, 365

Gouskova, Maria 674

Gouws, Rufus H. 43, 82,  
244-247, 255, 256, 281,  
285-287, 802

Govender, Selverani 887

Gowlett, Derek F. 718,  
864

Grebe, Heinrich Philip  
366

Green, Christopher R.  
32

Green, Eugene 574

Griesel, Marissa 998

Groenewald, Gerald  
419, 498

Groenewald, Hermanus  
C. 833, 834

Groenewald, H. J. 515

Groenewald, Manie  
cf. Groenewald,  
Hermanus C.

Grucza, Franciszek 2

Guidetti, Michèle 872  
 Guijarro-Fuentes, Pedro 90  
 Güldemann, Tom 1028  
 Gumede, Grace 851  
 Gunnink, Hilde 164, 981  
 Gussenhoven, Carlos 170  
 Gut, Ulrike 563  
 Gxilishe, Sandile 865, 870  
 Gxowa-Dlayedwa, Ntombizodwa 656, 709, 839, 851  
 Ha, Linne 994  
 Haacke, Wilfried H. G. 51, 1032-1035  
 Haan, Ger de cf. Haan, Germen J. de 170  
 Haan, Germen J. de 170  
 Haard, Eric de 44  
 Haas, Nynke de 14  
 Hadebe, Vusumuzi 934  
 Haeb-Umbach, Reinhold 1001  
 Hale, Kenneth L. 39  
 Hallé, Pierre A. 71  
 Halpert, Claire 78, 675, 683, 719, 758-760  
 Ham, Margreet van der 79  
 Hanekom, Gert van der Merwe 327  
 Hanong Thetela, Puleng 888  
 Hanssen, Esther 354  
 Harbert, Wayne E. 502  
 Harford, Carolyn 684, 697  
 Haron, Muhammed 431  
 Harteveld, Pieter 274, 279, 280  
 Hartmann, Dieter 581  
 Hartmann, Katharina 77  
 Hatoss, Anikó 403  
 Hauptfleisch, D. C. 279  
 Heerden, Charl van 994  
 Heeren, Willemijn 68  
 Heeringa, Wilbert 486  
 Hefer, Esté 859, 860  
 Heid, Ulrich 82, 791, 995, 1002, 1006  
 Heine, Bernd 1036  
 Hendricks, Frank 321  
 Hendrikse, A. P. 840  
 Hernández, Natividad 11  
 Heugh, Kathleen 935  
 Heukelum, Marie-Louise van 568  
 Heuven, Vincent J. van 170  
 Hibbert, Liesel 130, 604, 876  
 Hickey, Raymond 137, 138, 590, 621  
 Hicks, Sheila 543  
 Hieda, Osamu 13  
 Hiles, Lorna 544  
 Hill, Lloyd B. 115, 471  
 Hilton, Nanna Haug 912  
 Hinskens, Frans L. M. P. 155, 163, 184  
 Hlongwa, Nobuhle 913  
 Hlungwani, Madala Crous 711, 738, 769  
 Hoekstra, Eric 170  
 Hoekstra, Jarich 170  
 Hoffmann, Thomas 36, 570  
 Hogue, E. Alan 22  
 Höhle, Barbara 347  
 Hollington, Andrea 104  
 Holm, John A. 62  
 Holmberg, Anders 1044  
 Honselaar, Wim 44  
 Hoogeveen, Bart 170  
 Hoole, Philip 6  
 Horáková, Hana 404  
 Horn, Laurence R. 74  
 Hornberger, Nancy H. 936  
 Horne, Fiona 152  
 Horst, Johannes M. van der 220  
 Hout, Roeland van 345, 349  
 Hoza, Mfusi 851  
 Huber, Magnus 570, 629  
 Huddlestorne, Kate 195, 221, 222, 421, 473, 554, 608, 1055  
 Hugo, Daniel 463  
 Hundt, Marianne 580  
 Hurst, Ellen 351, 367, 368, 373, 405, 644, 889  
 Huyssteen, Gerhard B. van 27, 173, 193, 194, 198, 266, 267, 486, 515, 516, 520, 521  
 Hyman, Larry M. 989  
 Ishida, Priscilla 86  
 Ivala, Eunice 632  
 Jadezweni, Mhlobo W. 890  
 Jansche, Martin 994

## INDEX OF NAMES

Janse van Vuuren,  
Hermanus H. 396

Jansen, Carel 188, 510,  
582

Jantjies, Wesley 316

Jaxa, Nontembiso 818

Jenkins, Elwyn R. 144

Jensma, Goffe 20

Jespersen, Otto 491

Johanson Botha, Liz  
969

Jokweni, Mbulelo W.  
851

Jong, Gerbrich de 170

Jonge, Robert de 59, 64

Jordaan, Adéle 223

Jucker, Andreas H. 522

Kadenge, Maxwell 678,  
937, 941

Kalsbeek, Janneke 44

Kampen, Jacqueline  
van 224

Kamwendo, Gregory cf.

Kamwendo, Gregory  
Hankoni

Kamwendo, Gregory  
Hankoni 913, 938

Καναράκης, Γεώργιος cf.  
Kanarakis, Georgios

Kanarakis, Georgios 150

Kandybowicz, Jason  
633

Kang, Shinae 26

Kaplan, Aaron F. 25

Kaplan, Abby 25, 185

Kapp, Pieter 369

Karawani, Hadil 719

Kaschula, Russell H. 96,  
841, 970

Kassiem, Gava 406

Katz, Mara 23

Kautzsch, Alexander  
570, 609

Kawahara, Shigeto 662

Keet, C. Maria 720

Keizer, M. Evelien 44,  
170

Keller, Wolfgang 63

Kemenade, Ans van 14

Kenstowicz, Michael J.  
73

Kerford, Justine 654

Ketsi, Kavila Lititinga  
1037

Keymeulen, Jacques  
Van 42, 472

Keyser, Samuel Jay 39

Kgolo, Naledi 857

Khati, Thekiso G. 21

Khumalo, Langa 40,  
720, 761-764, 795,  
851, 939

Kim, Kyeong-min 23

Kirsner, Robert S. 59,  
157, 159, 299, 310

Kirstein, Anna 170

Kirsten, Johanita 225,  
226, 370, 371, 407,  
503, 504

Kjartansson, Oddur  
994

Kleynhans, Neil 994

Kline, Melissa 863

Klop, Daleen 346

Koch, Jerzy 163

Koeneman, Olaf 79

Köhlo, Mikhaela D. K.  
1056

Köhnlein, Björn 170

König, Christa 13, 1036

Koopman, Adrian 821,  
1010, 1019, 1020, 1025,  
1026

Kopaczyk, Joanna 522

Koppen, Marjo van 218

Kortmann, Bernd 17

Kosch, Ingeborg M. 721,  
804, 805

Kosem, Iztok 10

Kosem, Karmen 10

Kossmann, Maarten  
G. 48

Koster, Jan 45

Kotzé, Albert E. 698,  
722, 996

Kotzé, Ernst F. 227, 288,  
330, 432, 433

Kotzé, Gideon R. 517

Kotzé, Ian 407

Kotzé, Petronella M.  
723, 724

Kretzer, Michael M.  
891

Krüger, Casper J. H. 765

Kruger, Haidee 66, 239,  
616

Krüger, Rynhardt P.  
1007

Kubayi, Sikheto Joe  
710, 766

Kučerová, Ivona 89

Kühnert, Barbara 6

Kulkarni-Joshi, Sonal  
149

Kunene-Nicolas,  
Ramona N. 872, 873

Kürschner, Sebastian  
199

Kwamwangamalu,  
Nkonko M. 638

Labuschagne, F. J. 268, 269  
 Land, Sandra 861  
 Landsbergen, Frank 170  
 Langa, David Alberto  
 Seth 767  
 Larrañaga, María Pilar  
 90  
 Le Cordeur, Michael  
 408, 434, 505  
 Le Roux, Beth 963  
 Le Roux, Jurie 667, 768,  
 784  
 Le Roux, Mia 666, 667  
 Lee, Seunghun J. 662,  
 676, 681, 685, 699,  
 711, 769  
 Lee-Kim, Sang-Im 662  
 Legère, Karsten 46, 646  
 Leibring, Katharina 4  
 Lekakou, Marika 79  
 Lekgoro, Tshepiso 358  
 Lenz, Alexandra N. 487  
 Leroyer, Patrick 286  
 Lesch, Harold M. 356  
 Letsholo, Rose M. 914  
 Levon, Erez 355  
 Libert, Ekaterina A. 166  
 Lim, Lisa 1043  
 Linke, Kathrin 170  
 Litosseliti, Lia 636  
 Lohöfer, Astrid 63  
 Lombard, Ellen 915  
 Lombard, F. J. 274-277,  
 280  
 Lombard, Shona 875  
 Lopes, Ruth E.  
 Vasconcellos 143  
 López Couso, María  
 José 523

Loth, Chrismi-Rinda  
 129  
 Lotz, Susan 328, 329  
 Louw, Phillip A. 275, 276  
 Love, Alison M. 21  
 Lubbe, Elmarie 302  
 Lubinga, Elizabeth 640  
 Lucas, Christopher 7  
 Luijks, Carla 202  
 Ma, Xiujie 987  
 Mabandla, Nkululeko  
 579  
 Mabaso, X. E. 850  
 Mabule, D. R. 822, 846  
 Mabuto, Morgen Peter  
 940  
 Machalík, Tomáš 35  
 Machobane, 'Malillo  
 'Matšepo 21, 866, 867  
 Madadzhe, Richard  
 Ndwayamato 710, 847,  
 892  
 Madell, Madelynne 372  
 Madiba, Mbulungeni  
 806  
 Madolo, Yolisa 851  
 Madonsela, Stanley  
 851, 893  
 Maes, Alfons A. 160  
 Mafela, Munzhedzi  
 James 57, 785, 786,  
 826  
 Magongwa, Lucas 1057  
 Magqashela, Fikiswa  
 818  
 Mahlangu, K. S. 977  
 Mahlangu, Sponono  
 807  
 Maimane, Ketlalemang  
 978

Makalela, Leketi 131,  
 140, 352  
 Makoaé, Aloysia  
 Sebueng 1018  
 Makoe, Pinky 97  
 Malambe, Gloria B. 677,  
 684, 851  
 Malan, Saskia 549  
 Maltzan, Carlotta von  
 154  
 Mandende, Itani Peter  
 1011  
 Mann, Charles C. 976  
 Mansvelt, Nicolaas 55  
 Maphalala, Zinhle 869  
 Maphosa, Mandlenkosi  
 796  
 Mapi, Thandeka 970  
 Maribe, Tebogo 409  
 Maritz, Anna P. 410  
 Marlo, Michael R. 32  
 Marriote Ngwaru, Jacob  
 113  
 Marten, Lutz 649, 733,  
 757  
 Martin, Willy 289, 290,  
 411  
 Maseko, Pamela 970  
 Mashamba, Mabula 847  
 Masilela, Piet 851  
 Masini, Francesca 75  
 Masinyana, Sibabalwe  
 Oscar 610  
 Masoke-Kadenge,  
 Emure 941  
 Mathabi, Mashudu 852  
 Mathangwane, Joyce  
 T. 787  
 Mathonsi, Nhlanhla  
 700, 788, 831, 978

## INDEX OF NAMES

Matlhaku, Keneilwe 894, 914  
Matlosa, Lits'episo 1012  
Matthew, Gordon 518  
Matthews, Stephen 1043  
Mavoungou, Paul Achille 43  
Mayaba, N. N. 650  
Mazibuko, Guguethu 851  
Mbatha, T. A. 916, 928  
Mbulaheni Musehane, Nelson 810  
Mc Laughlin, Fiona 639  
McCarthy, John J. 686  
McCarvel, Miranda K. 25  
McCormick, Kay M. 613  
McCormick, Tracey Lee 597  
McDuling, Allistair 151  
McGranaghan, Mark 1038  
McIlroy, Guy 1059  
McInerney, Patricia 887  
McKinney, Carolyn 97, 598  
McLachlan, J. D. (Tom) 332-336, 436, 479  
McLachlan, Kate 599  
Meiring, Babs 1021  
Mekacha, Rugatiri D. K. 46  
Méndez Naya, Belén 523  
Merwe, Christian H. J. van der 537  
Merwe, Heleen van der 346  
Merwe, Kristin van der 340, 341, 856  
Merwe, Michele F. van der 248  
Messerschmidt, H. J. 230, 312  
Messerschmidt, J. J. E. 228-230, 311, 312  
Mesthrie, Rajend 98, 141, 147-149, 373, 374, 405, 528, 532, 538, 541, 545, 571, 583-586, 599, 600, 615, 617, 618, 622, 942, 979, 1048, 1051  
Meyer, Bernd 132, 313  
Meyer, Charles F. 574  
Meyerhoff, Miriam 49  
Mfazwe-Mojapelo, Lungelwa Rose 890  
Mgqwashu, Emmanuel Mfanafuthi 943  
Midtlyng, Patrick J. 668  
Milani, Tommaso M. 415  
Milewski, Tadeusz 15  
Minow, Verena 587  
Mitchley, Hazel 777  
Miti, Lazarus Musazitame 118  
Mkhize, Dumisile N. 895  
Mkhize, Nhlanhla 913  
Mletshe, Loyiso 739, 747, 748  
Mogase, Phuti 838  
Mogodi, M. P. 816  
Mohanty, Panchanan 12  
Mojapelo, Mampaka 725, 770  
Mojela, V. M. 789, 808, 917  
Mokibelo, Eureka B. 944  
Mollema, Nina 820  
Möller, Jana 963  
Moloi, Francina L. 21, 866, 867  
Mongwe, M. J. 809  
Monich, Irina 701, 726  
Moodley, Dianna Lynette 918  
Mooshammer, Christine 6  
Morapedi, Setumile 771  
Morgan, Ruth 1057  
Moropa, Koliswa 848  
Morrison, Michelle E. 32  
Mostert, André 96, 841  
Mostert, Carola 649  
Moyo, Nobuhle 823  
Mpendumana, Sibonile 465  
Mphahlele, Motlokwe Clifford 797  
Msibi, Thabo 896, 919  
Mufwene, Salikoko S. 462  
Muhr, Rudolf 11  
Mulaudzi, Phalandwa Abraham 985  
Müller, Nicole 69  
Mullin, Kevin 686  
Mumin, Meikal 3  
Murdoch, Alan 323  
Musehane, Mbulaheni 852  
Mutasa, Davie E. 99, 945, 946

Muysken, Pieter 133  
 Mwaniki, Munene 119  
 Mwepu, Dominique  
     Ngoy 437  
 Nagy, Naomi 49  
 Naidoo, Shamila 657,  
     658, 700  
 Nakagawa, Hiroshi 13  
 Nash, Léa 76  
 Nassenstein, Nico 104  
 Nau, Nicole 18  
 Naudé, Jacobus A. 322,  
     324  
 Nchabeleng, Mahlodi  
     Jean 825  
 Ndebele, Hloniphani  
     897, 971  
 Ndebele, Lickel 696, 717  
 Ndhlovu, Finex 120,  
     605, 641  
 Ndhlovu, Ketiwe 993  
 Ndimande-Hlongwa,  
     Nobuhle 897, 971  
 Ndlovu, Eventhough  
     798, 799, 947, 948  
 Ndlovu, Manqoba  
     Victor 842  
 Ndlovu, Mbulisi 717  
 Ndlovu, Sambulo 740,  
     898, 940  
 Neleman, Ad 89  
 Neethling, Bertie cf.  
     Neethling, Siebert J.  
 Neethling, Siebert J. 145,  
     325, 920, 921, 949,  
     1013-1015  
 Neijt, Anneke 188, 354  
 Nekvapil, Jiří 100  
 Nel, Joanine 473  
 Nel, Marié M. 274, 280  
 Nelani, Linda 818, 970  
 Nevalainen, Terttu 524  
 Newbold, Lindsey 24  
 Ngcobo, Mtholeni N 121,  
     122, 828, 980  
 Ngcobo, Sandiso 950  
 Ngubane, Sihawukele E.  
     851, 1016, 1017  
 Ngunga, Armindo Saúl  
     Atelela 772  
 Ngwenya, Thembu  
     Lancelot 107, 438  
 Nhlekisana, Rosaleen  
     O. B. 899  
 Nichols, Peter 727  
 Nickel-Thompson,  
     Sophie 23  
 Nicolaï, Robert 47, 48  
 Niekerk, Aletta E. van  
     274, 280  
 Niekerk, Angelique van  
     302, 317, 318, 458  
 Niekerk, Daniel van  
     180, 994  
 Niekerk, Tim van 546  
 Nielsen, Sandro 38  
 Niesler, Thomas 672,  
     1008  
 Nkomo, Dion 43, 651,  
     790, 796, 806, 823, 851  
 Nkosi, Zethu 887  
 Nkosi, Zinhle Primrose  
     900, 922  
 Nkuna, Paul H. 853  
 Nokele, Amanda B. B.  
     832  
 Nomdebevana, N. 840  
 Noordegraaf, Jan 167,  
     439  
 Nosilela, Bulelwa 970  
 Noske, Roland 72  
 Nowowiejski, Bogusław  
     86  
 Nthambeleni, Mashudu  
     810  
 Ntombela, Sipho Albert  
     843  
 Ntuli, Mduduzi 904  
 Núñez Pertejo, Paloma  
     523  
 Nyström, Staffan 4  
 O'Grady, Cathleen 529  
 O'Grady, Gerard 88  
 Odendaal, Gerda 171,  
     249, 375  
 Okabe, Reiko 80  
 Olivier, Jako 172, 309,  
     318, 606, 901  
 Olmen, Daniël van 488  
 Oort, Ronel van 175  
 Oostendorp, Marc van  
     170  
 Oostendorp, Marcelyn  
     135, 301, 908  
 Oosthuizen, Helena 347  
 Oosthuizen, Johan 91,  
     213, 231-233, 236  
 Oosthuysen, J. C. (Koos)  
     53  
 Orie, Olaniké Ola 31  
 Orman, Jon 123, 440, 441  
 Ostler, Nicholas 12  
 Otlogetswi, Thapelo  
     Joseph 542, 652, 800,  
     801  
 Otto, Anna Nel 259, 270,  
     271, 376  
 Otto, Annél cf. Otto,  
     Anna Nel  
 Ouddeken, Nina 170

## INDEX OF NAMES

Pacchiarotti, Sara 9  
Pacilly, Jos J. A. 68  
Pakendorf, Brigitte 981  
Pala, Karel 997  
Palacios Martínez,  
    Ignacio M. 523  
Paradkar, Ruta 149  
Parmegiani, Andrea  
    601, 923  
Partridge, Maristi 567  
Pascoe, Michelle 869  
Pauw, J. C. 395-397  
Payne, Doris L. 9  
Peck, Amiena 905  
Penn, Claire 102  
Perez, Marilola 24  
Phaahla, Pinkie 642,  
    951, 972  
Phiri, Sellinah 851  
Pienaar, Kiran 553  
Pienaar, Marné 41, 114,  
    295, 296, 300, 393,  
    442  
Pienaar, Wikus 180, 670  
Pillay, Venitha 952  
Pilon, Suléne 512, 519,  
    520  
Piotrowska, Caroline  
    550  
Piqueras-Brunet, Marta  
    24  
Plessis, André du 250,  
    251, 546  
Plessis, Deon du 572  
Plessis, J. C. M. D. du  
    274, 275, 279, 280  
Plessis, Lourens du 459  
Plessis, Theodorus du  
    123-124, 128, 294, 415,  
    416, 920-922  
Ponelis, Fritz 219  
Posel, Dorrit 902, 973  
Possa, Rethabile  
    Marriet 827  
Posthumus, Lionel C.  
    712, 713, 835  
Potgieter, Anneke  
    Perold 234  
Potgieter, Jean-Marie  
    211  
Potgieter, Liezl 291  
Potgieter, Petrus H.  
    395-397  
Pouplier, Marianne 6  
Prah, Kwesi Kwaa 126,  
    435, 451  
Prędota, Stanisław 200,  
    201, 297  
Pretorius, Elizabeth J.  
    560, 862, 956  
Pretorius, Erin 235-238  
Pretorius, Laurette 464,  
    773, 830, 992, 999,  
    1003-1005  
Pretorius, Rigardt 673,  
    728, 773, 1004, 1005  
Pretorius, W. J. 714  
Prieto, Emilio 11  
Prieto i Vives, Pilar 29  
Prinsloo, Anton F. 294,  
    485  
Prinsloo, D. J. 83, 85,  
    252-254, 260, 273,  
    287, 292, 513, 791,  
    792, 802, 811-815, 995,  
    1000, 1002, 1006  
Prinsloo, Daniel J. 791  
Probert, Tracy 654  
Pullum, Geoffrey K. 65  
Punske, Jeffrey 22  
Purvis, Tristan M. 32  
Puttkammer, M. J. 514,  
    520  
Pylkkänen, Liina 81  
Qhala, Taclo 21  
Rademeyer, Liza  
    274-277  
Raidt, Edith H. 494  
Ralarala, Monwabisi  
    Knowledge 96, 632,  
    957  
Ramaeba, Goabilwe 542  
Ranamane, Thlabane  
    D. 958  
Raper, Peter E. 1022,  
    1023, 1039  
Raselekoane, Nanga  
    Raymond 643  
Reagan, Timothy G.  
    1058  
Rensburg, Alta van 328,  
    329  
Rensburg, Christo van  
    54, 445, 446, 480,  
    506-508  
Rensburg, Henriette  
    van 403  
Rensburg, MCJ van cf.  
    Rensburg, Christo van  
Reynolds, Mary 818  
Rhomieux, Russell 24  
Rialland, Annie 637  
Ribbens-Klein, Yolandi  
    377  
Richards, Rose 510  
Ritchie, William C. 128  
Roberge, Paul T. 60, 202,  
    1045  
Rooy, Bertus van 66,  
    168, 239, 412, 550-552,

588, 607, 616, 619,  
623, 624, 627, 630,  
862

Rosenbach, Anette 196

Rossouw, Ronel 627

Roux, Justus C. 658, 885

Rubin, Edward J. 25

Rudwick, Stephanie  
Inge 903, 904, 919,  
923-925, 959

Russow, Gerald 55

Ryman, Lennart 4

Saal, Elvis O. 378, 413

Salverda, Reinier 20

Sam, Msindisi 970

Samvelian, Pollet 76

Sândalo, Filomena 143

Sanders, Karen W. 31

Sands, Bonny 981

Sandy, Clare S. 26

Sankoff, Gillian 49

Stavić, Stefan 836

Scaraffiotti, Zamantuli  
653

Schalkwyk, Dirk J. van  
274, 275, 279, 280

Scheepers, Ruth 565

Scheliha, Arnulf von  
116

Schertz, Jessamyn 22

Schierholz, Stefan J. 2

Schiller, Niels O. 68

Schlünz, Georg I. 1007

Schneider, Edgar W. 570

Schoeman, Renata 344,  
350

Schreuder, Robert 188,  
354

Schrijver, Gilles-  
Maurice de cf.

Schryver, Gilles-  
Maurice de

Schryver, Gilles-  
Maurice de 715, 793,  
803, 816-819

Schuchardt, Hugo 55

Schweickard, Wolfgang  
82

Scott-Macnab, David  
547

Seargeant, Philip 106

Sebregts, Koen 170

Segalo, Puleng 110

Seidel, A. 1040

Seidel, Frank 647

Selbach, Rachel 37

Senekal, Burgert 414

Sengani, Thomas M.  
844, 845

Senkbeil, Karsten 555

Seoane, Elena 535

Shah, Sheena 16

Shaikjee, Mooniq 415

Sharma, Devyani 580,  
625

Sheehan, Michelle L. 34

Shorten, Lisa 23

Shosted, Ryan K. 30, 663

Sibanda, Galen 774

Sibiya, Nomusa 803

Siebers, Lucia 36, 573,  
628

Siebörger, Ian 556, 557,  
1054, 1056

Simango, Sylvester Ron  
982, 983, 987

Simon, Horst J. 2, 319

Simone, Raffaele 75

Simpson, Gerda 379

Singh, Rajendra 146

Singler, John Victor 50

Sipamla, Nelisa 818

Siyepu, Sibawu 632

Siziba, Gugulethu 926

Slabbert, Sarah 114

Smit, Delanie 346

Smit, Maria 255

Smith, Brian W. 686

Smith, Norval 5

Smoczyński, Wojciech  
15

Smouse, Mantoa Rose  
869-871

Snyman, Dirk 521

Sobane, Konosoang 974

Sousa, Diana de 337

Southwood, Frenette  
91, 338, 341, 342, 345,  
347-350

Spaull, Nic 560

Spuy, Andrew van der  
702, 729-731, 734, 735

Stander, Marga 1059

Starks, Donna 403

Stell, Gerald 380-384,  
416-419, 447, 474, 475,  
927, 1052

Stelleman, Jenny 44

Steyn, Hennie 453

Steyn, J. C. 161, 448-450

Stickles, Elise 26

Stoltz, Thomas 1, 18, 52

Stroh, Cornelia 18

Ström, Eva-Marie  
Bloom 775

Stroud, Christopher 103,  
127, 136, 391, 420, 465

Stump, Gregory T. 736

Suárez-Gómez, Cristina  
535

## INDEX OF NAMES

Sunderland, Jane 636, 879  
Swanepoel, Piet H. 272  
Swart, Corlietha 56  
Swart, Henriëtte de 222  
Swerts, Marc 533  
Szerszunowicz, Joanna 86  
Szmrecsanyi, Benedikt 17  
Taeldeman, Johan 155  
Tagg, Caroline 106  
Taljard, Elsabé 253, 260, 273, 715, 816, 824, 825, 829, 990, 991, 995, 1002, 1006  
Taraldsen, Knut Tarald 240, 732  
Tarp, Sven 38, 256  
Tat, Deniz 22  
Tchilunda, Fernando 1037  
Terblanche, Lize 624  
Thabethe, Nompumelelo 1017  
Thamaga-Chitja, J. M. 928  
Theron, Janina 344  
Thomas, Kimberley D. 661  
Thomas-Vilakati, Kimberly Diane cf. Thomas, Kimberley D.  
Thornell, Christina 646  
Thutloa, Alfred Mautsane 421  
Tiberius, Carole 170  
Tlale Boyer, One 674  
Tobin, Yishai 64  
Toefy, Tracey 589  
Torrence, Harold 633  
Tosco, Mauro 48  
Traill, Anthony 51  
Traugott, Elizabeth Closs 524  
Trimbur, John 101  
Trueman, Alex 22  
Turner, Noleen S. 960  
Ulferts, Hella 1  
Umbal, Pocholo 23  
Veenstra, Tonjes 77  
Velghe, Fie 385, 386  
Verhoeven, Ben 27, 215, 516  
Versloot, Arjen P. 170  
Versteegh, Cornelis H. M. 3, 387, 388  
Versteegh, Kees cf. Versteegh, Cornelis H. M.  
Vigouroux, Cécile B. 462  
Vikstrand, Per 4  
Vila i Moreno, F. Xavier 117  
Vilakati, Sizakele 851  
Viljoen, Biffie 1004, 1005  
Villiers, Jill G. de 870  
Villiers, Peter A. de 870  
Visser, Marianna W. 716, 741, 776, 986  
Visser, Monique 346  
Visser, Willem 170  
Vivier, Elmé 631  
Vos, Mark de 241, 539, 575, 777, 856  
Vos, Riet 170  
Vossen, Rainer 51, 1042  
Vossmann, Christina 52  
Vratsanos, Alyssa 678  
Vries, Mark de 45  
Vries, Truus de 170  
Vrzić, Zvjezdana 50  
Vyver, Corné van der 326  
Waal, C. S. van der 452  
Wababa, Zola 790  
Wal, Jenneke van der 989  
Wal, Marijke J. van der 33, 389  
Walt, Christa van der 876  
Walt, Hannes van der 453  
Walt, Johannes L. van der 454  
Walter, Oliver 1001  
Walton, Wendy 818  
Wąsik, Zdzisław 139  
Wasserman, Ronel 551, 552, 620  
Watermeyer, Jennifer 102  
Watts, Sheila 7  
Webb, Victor N. 455, 456, 961  
Weening, Joke 170  
Weijer, Jeroen M. van de 162  
Wentzel, Dorien 887  
Werner, Valentin 535  
Weschler, Sara 868  
Wesi, Tsholofelo 654  
Westhuizen, Ewald van der 672, 1008  
Wet, Annette de 242  
Wet, Febe de 486  
Whitelaw, Emma 708

Wiegand, Herbert Ernst 82, 255	Wissing, Daan P. 176, 178-180, 186, 187, 189, 659, 664, 669, 670	Zeller, Jochen 687, 760, 778-783, 902, 973
Wielligh, G. R. von 56, 448	Włodarczyk, Matylda 558, 559, 592	Zerbian, Sabine 530, 533, 534, 540, 576, 581, 671, 687-691, 703, 704
Wildsmith-Cromarty, Rosemary 849, 929, 960	Wojtyła-Świerzowska, Maria 15	Zimmermann, Klaus 11
Willemse, Hein 501	Wolhuter, Charl C. 454	Zondo, Jerry 794
Willemyns, Roland 481	Wouden, Anton van der 170, 509	Zonneveld, Wim 58, 566
Willenberg, Ingrid 564	Wunder, Eva-Maria 563	Zotwana, Sidney 818
Williams, Michellene 457	Wyk, G. J. van 274-277	Zsiga, Elizabeth C. 665, 674, 984
Williams, Quentin Emmanuel 103, 136, 390, 391, 476	Yagi, Katsumasa 86	Zulu, Nogwaja S. 851, 1018
Willis, David 7	Yu, Ke 631, 952, 964	Zulu, P. N. 142
Wilmot, Kirstin 591	Zaanen, Menno van 27	Zwart, C. Jan-Wouter 45, 243
Wilsenach, Carien 874	Záhořík, Jan 35	Zyl, Liezl van 510
	Zanten, Ellen van 68	
	Zanuttini, Raffaella 74	
	Zeijlstra, Hedde 212, 305	

## INDEX OF LANGUAGES

This index contains languages, language families, dialects, regiolects and language (sub)systems. When a language is not mentioned in the table of contents, information on its affiliation is added in brackets.

Aakhoe *see: Khoekhoe* 441, 455, 457, 458, 468, 471, 475, 476, 493, 533, 542, 561, 566, 567, 579, 591, 601, 610-612, 646-1026, 1030, 1031

African French 112

Afrikaans 33, 54-56, 58, 60-62, 66, 83-85, 91, 103, 110, 112, 115, 120, 131, 133, 134, 136, 142, 163-521, 537, 552, 562, 566, 579, 602, 606, 609, 611-613, 616, 620, 648, 785, 789, 792, 802, 809, 820, 859, 880, 882, 886, 902, 905, 906, 908, 912, 920, 927, 930, 932, 934, 936, 945, 952-955, 957, 962, 963, 966-968, 977, 994, 1007, 1020, 1032, 1033

Bantu 46, 53, 57, 70, 71, 78, 80, 83, 85, 103, 110, 118, 120, 131, 133, 134, 142, 145, 164, 234, 287, 296, 313, 325, 351, 357, 360, 372-374, 391, 398, 400, 424, 437, 438, 441, 455, 457, 458, 468, 471, 475, 476, 493, 533, 542, 561, 566, 567, 579, 591, 601, 610-612, 646-1026, 1030, 1031

Bantu-Botatwe *see: Lenje-Tonga* M60

Bemba (Bantu) 80

Bemba M40 (Bantu) 80

Benue-Congo, general 181, 183, 645, 686

Birwa (Bantu) 882, 984

Black South African English *see: South African Black English*

Cape Dutch Pidgin 55, 182, 191, 202, 206, 208, 490, 1027, 1049, 1050, 1052

Central Kenya Bantu *see: Kikuyu-Kamba* E50

Central Khoisan *see: Khoe* Chaga E60 (Bantu) 80

Changana (Bantu) 142, 662, 663, 676, 678, 681, 685, 699, 710, 711, 738, 756, 766, 767, 769, 772, 789, 809, 850, 853, 940, 947, 986, 1001, 1024

Chewa-Nyanja (Bantu) 682, 931

Chewa-Nyanja N30 (Bantu) 682, 931

English, general 145, 522-524, 535, 1019

English, Modern 17, 36, 71, 78, 80, 85, 97, 103, 105, 110, 112, 120, 131, 133, 134, 136, 142, 195, 196, 218, 234, 296, 313, 317, 322-324, 327-329, 337, 344, 350, 353, 355, 357, 360, 372, 378, 381, 390-392, 394, 397, 399, 403, 414, 418, 421, 428, 437, 438, 441, 443, 457,

458, 465, 468, 470,  
471, 473-476, 479,  
525-630, 648, 787,  
789, 803, 809, 811, 816,  
837, 842, 846-849,  
859, 860, 862, 874,  
886, 887, 895, 897,  
902, 907, 908, 912,  
918, 920, 923, 927,  
928, 934, 936, 938,  
944, 945, 952-954,  
956, 957, 965-968,  
973, 974, 977, 982,  
983, 993, 997, 1001,  
1007, 1008, 1031

Esimbi (Benue-Congo) 686

Fanakalo (Pidgins and creoles with lexifiers other than Romance and English) 979, 1051

Flaaitaal *see: Tsotsitaal*

French of Subsaharan Africa *see: African French*

Fwe (Bantu) 981

Ganda (Bantu) 80

Herero (Bantu) 882

Herero R30 (Bantu) 882

Hottentot Dutch *see: Cape Dutch Pidgin*

Ikuhane (Bantu) 882

Indian English 147, 548, 571, 580, 583, 586, 625

Iscamtho (Pidgins and creoles with lexifiers other than Romance and English) 358, 373

Ju (Khoisan) 1036, 1037

Kalahari Khoe (Khoisan) 1030

Kalanga (Bantu) 914, 947, 1009

Kalenjin (Nilo-Saharan) 1036

Kgalagadi (Bantu) 914

Khoe (Khoisan) 202, 205, 206, 208, 480, 1040, 1042

Khoekhoe (Khoisan) 184, 508, 975, 1032-1035

Khoekhoe *see: Khoekhoe*

Khoesan *see: Khoisan*

Khoisan 16, 51, 175, 184, 202, 205, 208, 480, 490, 506, 508, 882, 975, 981, 1022, 1023, 1027-1042

Khwe *see: Kxoe*

Kikuyu (Bantu) 686

Kikuyu-Kamba E50 (Bantu) 686

Kokni *see: Konkani*

Konkani (Southern Indo-Aryan) 148, 149

Krio (English lexifier pidgins and creoles) 629

Kwangali (Bantu) 981

Kxoe (Khoisan) 1036

Languages of Sub-Saharan Africa, general 3, 9, 28, 31, 32, 40, 47, 48, 105, 112, 331, 462, 594, 604, 617, 632-644, 929

Lembethu (Bantu) 985

Lenje-Tonga M60 (Bantu) 947

Luso-Asian creoles 1046, 1047

Luyana K30 (Bantu) 882, 981

Makhuwa (Bantu) 78, 772

Makhuwa P30 (Bantu) 78, 772

Makonde (Bantu) 772

Malagasy 202

Manyo (Bantu) 981

Mbukushu (Bantu) 882, 981

Modern English *see: English, Modern*

Nama (Khoisan) *see: Khoekhoe*

Nambya (Bantu) 947

Ndebele (Bantu) 142, 651, 696, 717, 732, 740, 746, 761-764, 774, 794-796, 798, 799, 807, 823, 898, 977, 993, 999

Ndebele of Zimbabwe (Bantu) 694, 882, 914, 981

Nguni S40 (Bantu) 53, 71, 78, 103, 133, 142, 164, 234, 296, 313, 325, 360, 372, 374, 457, 471, 476, 533, 561, 591, 601, 610, 612, 648-651, 653, 655-658, 660,

## INDEX OF LANGUAGES

661, 668, 672, 675,  
 677, 679, 682-684,  
 687, 692-694, 696,  
 697, 700, 702, 705,  
 706, 708, 709, 712,  
 713, 716-720, 726, 727,  
 729-735, 739-752, 755,  
 757-764, 774-776,  
 778-783, 785, 788-790,  
 793-796, 798, 799,  
 802, 803, 809, 812,  
 817-819, 821, 823, 828,  
 830-836, 839-843,  
 848, 849, 851, 855,  
 856, 861, 862, 864,  
 865, 867, 869-873,  
 875, 881, 882, 884,  
 886, 887, 890,  
 893, 895-897, 900,  
 902-905, 907, 913,  
 916, 918-926, 928,  
 930, 931, 933-935, 938,  
 939, 941-943, 949,  
 950, 953, 956, 959,  
 961, 962, 965-967,  
 969-971, 975, 977,  
 979-983, 986, 987,  
 990-994, 997-999,  
 1003, 1007, 1008, 1010,  
 1013-1017, 1019, 1020,  
 1022, 1023, 1025, 1026,  
 1051

Nilamba-Rangi F30  
 (Bantu) 757

Nilo-Saharan 1036

Northern Khoisan  
 see: Ju

Northern Sotho (Bantu)  
 142, 296, 688, 698,  
 703, 714, 715, 721-725,

770, 789, 791, 792, 797,  
 802, 804, 805, 808,  
 813-816, 822, 824, 825,  
 829, 846, 854, 858,  
 874, 911, 917, 972, 976,  
 986, 990, 991, 995,  
 996, 998, 1000, 1002,  
 1006, 1007

Nyoro-Ganda JE10  
 (Bantu) 80

Obolo (Benue-Congo)  
 181, 183, 645

Okiek (Niko-Saharan)  
 1036

Phuthi (Bantu) 981

Pidgins and creoles  
 with lexifiers other  
 than Romance and  
 English 55, 164, 182,  
 191, 206, 358, 373, 452,  
 490, 509, 979, 1027,  
 1049-1052

Pidgins and creoles,  
 English lexifier 621,  
 629, 1048

Pidgins and creoles,  
 general 37, 50, 62,  
 208, 1043-1045

Pidgins and creoles,  
 Romance lexifier 1,  
 202, 206, 490, 493,  
 1046, 1047

Rangi (Bantu) 757

Rhonga (Bantu) 772

Sepitori (Bantu) 911, 976

Sheng (Bantu) 644

Shona (Bantu) 914, 1009

Shona S10 (Bantu) 914,  
 926, 947, 985, 1009

Shua see: Kalahari Khoe

Sotho-Tswana S30  
 (Bantu) 70, 142, 164,  
 296, 351, 542, 561,  
 566, 567, 651, 652,  
 654, 659, 664-667,  
 669, 670, 673, 674,  
 680, 688-691, 695,  
 698, 701, 703, 704,

707, 714, 715, 721-726,  
 728, 736, 737, 753,  
 754, 765, 768, 770,  
 771, 773, 777, 784, 785,  
 787, 789, 791, 792,  
 797, 800-802, 804,  
 805, 807, 808, 811,  
 813-816, 820, 822, 824,  
 825, 827, 829, 837,  
 838, 846, 849, 854,  
 857-860, 863, 866,  
 868, 874, 877-879,  
 882, 885, 886, 888,  
 891, 894, 898, 899,  
 901, 902, 909-912, 914,  
 917, 927, 930, 935,  
 937, 941, 944, 947,  
 953, 958, 972, 974,  
 976, 978, 981, 984,  
 986, 988, 990, 991,  
 994-996, 998, 1000,  
 1002, 1004-1007, 1009,  
 1012, 1018, 1030, 1031

South African Black  
 English 103, 105, 414,  
 418, 476, 525, 528,  
 532, 533, 536, 538,  
 540, 550, 551, 565,  
 571, 573, 576, 578, 581,  
 584, 585, 587-589,  
 591, 595, 596, 599-601,  
 623, 629, 630

South African English 103, 105, 110, 112, 133, 136, 142, 323, 353, 355, 357, 360, 372, 378, 381, 414, 418, 421, 428, 443, 473, 476, 526, 527, 529-531, 534, 539, 542-544, 546, 548, 551-554, 557-560, 562, 565, 568, 569, 572, 575-578, 582-585, 592-596, 598-600, 603, 605, 614-617, 619, 620, 622, 624, 625, 627, 629, 908, 968, 1007

South African Indian English 532, 541, 545, 571, 583, 585, 586, 600, 629, 1048

South African Sign Language 174, 284, 1053-1059

South Ndebele (Bantu) 981

Southern Khoisan *see: !Ui-Taa*

Southern Sotho (Bantu) 142, 659, 664, 669, 670, 726, 736, 777, 815, 827, 849, 859, 860, 863, 866-868, 877, 888, 891, 901, 912, 927, 937, 941, 953, 974, 978, 981, 986, 994, 1012, 1018

Subiya-Totela K40 (Bantu) 882, 981

Sub-Saharan African languages *see: Languages of*

Sub-Saharan Africa, general 940, 947, 986, 1001, 1024

Swahili (Bantu) 680, 757, 929

Swahili G40 (Bantu) 680, 757, 929

Swati (Bantu) 142, 677, 684, 727, 732, 733, 757, 893, 938, 981, 999

Tonga (Bantu) 947

Tsotsitaal (Afrikaans) 103, 164, 351, 352, 358, 367, 368, 373, 374, 398, 405, 409, 880, 889, 908, 962

Tswana (Bantu) 70, 142, 351, 542, 566, 567, 652, 654, 665-667, 669, 673, 674, 680, 689-691, 695, 701, 704, 707, 728, 737, 753, 754, 765, 768, 771, 773, 784, 787, 800-802, 811, 815, 837, 838, 849, 857, 878, 879, 882, 885, 886, 891, 894, 899, 909-912, 914, 944, 958, 984, 988, 994, 998, 1004, 1005, 1009, 1030, 1031

Tswapong (Bantu) 882, 914

Tswa-Rhonga S50 (Bantu) 142, 662, 663, 676, 678, 681, 685, 699, 710, 711, 738, 756, 766, 767, 769, 772, 785, 789, 809, 850, 853, 902, 908, 930, 949, 953, 962, 965, 967, 969, 970, 975, 981-983, 986, 987, 994, 998, 999, 1007, 1013-1015

Tumbuka N20 (Bantu) 682

Tuu *see: !Ui-Taa*

!Ui-Taa (Khoisan) 1023, 1031, 1038, 1039

Venda (Bantu) 57, 80, 142, 686, 786, 789, 806, 809, 810, 826, 844, 845, 847, 852, 883, 892, 940, 947, 948, 985, 986, 998, 1011

Venda S20 (Bantu) 57, 80, 142, 686, 785, 786, 789, 806, 809, 810, 826, 844, 845, 847, 852, 883, 892, 902, 930, 940, 947, 948, 985, 986, 998, 1011

Xhosa (Bantu) 53, 103, 133, 142, 234, 313, 325, 360, 372, 457, 591, 610, 612, 648, 650, 653, 656, 692, 705, 708, 709, 716, 718, 732, 739, 741, 747, 748, 775, 776, 790, 802, 818, 832, 836, 839-841, 848, 855, 856, 864, 865, 869-871, 875, 884, 886, 890, 905, 920, 921, 933, 942, 949, 953, 962, 965, 967, 969, 970, 975, 981-983, 986, 987, 994, 998, 999, 1007, 1013-1015

Yao P20 (Bantu) 772

## INDEX OF LANGUAGES

Yeyi (Bantu) 647, 882, 981

Yeyi R40 (Bantu) 647, 882, 981

Zimbabwean English 617

Zulu (Bantu) 71, 78, 103, 142, 296, 533, 601, 649, 655, 657, 658, 660, 661, 668, 672, 675, 679, 682, 683, 687, 693, 694, 697, 700, 702, 706, 712, 713, 719, 720, 726, 729-732, 734, 735, 742-745, 747, 749-752, 755, 758-760, 778-783, 788, 793, 803, 809, 812, 817, 819, 821, 828, 830, 831, 833-835, 842, 843, 849, 861, 862, 872, 873, 881, 887, 895, 897, 900, 903, 907, 913, 916, 918, 919, 922-925, 928, 931, 939, 941, 943, 950, 956, 959, 961, 971, 979-981, 986, 990-992, 997-999, 1003, 1007, 1008, 1010, 1016, 1017, 1019, 1020, 1022, 1023, 1025, 1026

## INDEX OF SUBJECTS

A-bar movement *see:*  
movement 868, 870, 979, 983,  
992, 1006, 1027, 1049

abbreviation 787, 886

abjad 3

absolute vs. relative  
tense 713, 833-835

accent 189, 527, 566

accommodation 98,  
416, 490, 591

accusativus-cum-  
infinitivo *see:* raising

acquisition planning  
114, 602, 604, 650,  
923, 940, 947, 948,  
956, 960, 961, 970

acronym *see:*  
abbreviation

adaptation 436, 680,  
807, 977, 978, 980,  
1033

address 319, 877

adjective 218, 227, 308,  
315, 693, 707, 730

adjunct 751

adverb 226, 308, 315,  
714, 751, 768

adverbial 226

affix 354, 497, 698-700,  
704, 707, 717, 721-724,  
728, 729, 731, 732, 735,  
743, 747, 853, 866,

alveolar 529

ambiguity 692, 820, 854

A-movement *see:*  
movement

animacy 196

annotation *see:* tagging

anthropological  
linguistics *see:*  
ethnolinguistics

anthroponymy 4, 920,  
921, 978, 1009-1018,  
1038

anticausative *see:*  
unaccusative

apheresis *see:* elision

apocope *see:* elision

apodosis *see:*  
conditional

applicative 80, 774

applied linguistics 2, 67,  
92, 153, 174, 175, 256,  
304, 337, 649-653,  
656, 791, 811, 1040

approximant *see:* glide

areal linguistics *see:*  
linguistic area

argot *see:* sociolect

argument structure *see:*  
valency

argumentation 557

article *see:* determiner

alphabet 387

## INDEX OF SUBJECTS

articulation 178, 529,  
662

aspect 156, 192, 193, 299,  
301, 562, 705, 711, 719,  
724, 727, 757, 836,  
855, 987

aspiration 583

assimilation 495, 675,  
677, 685, 699

attrition 201, 478

attrition (language  
loss) *see: language  
loss autosegmental  
phonology* 58, 704

auxiliary 217, 224, 243,  
487, 500, 503, 627, 711,  
723, 757

bibliography 147, 172

bilabial *see: labial*

bilingual education  
113, 117, 395, 414, 434,  
438, 443, 455, 603,  
605, 606, 642, 876,  
913, 915, 916, 918, 922,  
923, 936, 938, 943,  
944, 946, 950, 952,  
960, 961

bilingualism 105, 337,  
344, 350, 540, 561,  
562, 708, 965, 982

biographical data 60-62

blending theory 339

body part 822

borrowing 372, 470, 477,  
479, 480, 807, 975,  
977, 984, 1030, 1042

calque *see: loan  
translation*

case (genitive) *see:  
genitive*

case in generative  
grammar 748, 759

case marking 758

case system 737, 747,  
758

casus generalis *see: case  
system*

casus obliquus (case  
marking) *see: case  
marking*

casus obliquus (case  
system) *see: case  
system*

casus obliquus  
(genitive) *see:  
genitive*

causative 80

circumfix *see: affix*

cleft construction *see:  
clefting*

clefting 77, 750

click 656, 668, 981

clitic 90, 497, 741, 782,  
783, 870

coalescence 180, 678

coarticulation 180, 187,  
661

coda 1056

code-mixing *see:  
code-switching*

code-switching 98, 103,  
133, 357, 373, 374, 381,  
391, 394, 402, 416-418,  
456, 458, 470, 473,  
474, 476, 595, 610, 613,  
886, 893, 897, 927,  
982, 983, 1008

codification 161, 270,  
380, 433, 435, 436,  
445, 451, 472, 958

cognate 315, 986

cognition 301, 337

cognitive grammar *see:  
cognitive linguistics*

cognitive linguistics 59,  
63, 114, 197, 299, 303,  
311, 339, 504, 548, 567,  
705, 761

cohesion 842

collective noun *see:  
noun class*

collocation 216, 220, 271,  
314, 565, 829

colloquial 314, 362

color 784, 824

comitative 753

commisive *see: speech  
act*

comparative linguistics  
70, 137, 142, 208,  
215, 227, 240, 243,  
486-488, 509, 625,  
629, 757, 758, 986,  
987, 1029, 1041, 1046,  
1047

complementation 216,  
239, 745

complementizer *see:  
conjunction*

composition *see:  
compound*

compound 188, 354, 516,  
520, 740, 1005

computational  
linguistics 27, 184,  
515-521, 723, 773, 830,  
996-1008

computer-mediated  
communication 106,  
117, 357, 385, 386, 402,

413, 464, 470, 610, 841, 886, 901

conceptual blending

- theory *see: blending theory*

concord *see: agreement*

conditional 230, 312, 719

conditional mood *see: mood*

conjugation 370, 427

conjunction 204, 207, 209, 216, 223, 228, 229, 239, 259, 309, 312, 745, 768, 769

connective *see: conjunction*

connotation 394, 879

consonant 660, 685

consonant cluster 6, 495, 656, 675, 690

construction grammar 66, 228, 299, 312, 734

content question 745

context 550

context-free grammar 720

contrastive analysis 71, 196, 199, 200, 204, 214, 215, 218, 227, 234, 243, 297, 315, 319, 322, 381, 472, 488, 511, 533, 538, 551, 561, 569, 571, 576, 660, 682, 719, 726, 787, 862, 921

convergence 490, 551, 619, 1035, 1042

conversation analysis 418, 473, 841, 927

coordination 259, 753, 777

copula 503, 713, 723, 750

coreference 231

corpus 83, 229, 230, 254, 312, 315, 324, 558, 567, 592, 624, 808, 819, 825, 879, 1006

corpus linguistics 194, 196, 214-216, 223, 225, 226, 239, 252, 307, 314, 370, 382, 383, 503, 504, 511-514, 523, 535, 536, 550-552, 554, 565, 569, 587, 616, 623, 626, 627, 630, 715, 728, 773, 792, 829, 980, 992-995

corpus planning 295, 422-424, 429, 435, 451, 825, 930, 939, 942

co-text *see: context*

count noun *see: noun class*

coverb *see: serial verb*

creation of writing

- systems *see: codification*

creole genesis 5, 50, 62, 401, 452, 489, 490, 979, 1027, 1043, 1046, 1047

creolization *see: creole genesis*

critical discourse analysis 88, 317, 371, 407, 415, 556, 843, 845

cross-cultural

- interaction *see: intercultural communication*

cultural linguistics 988

database 517, 990, 991

declension 853

definiteness 716, 756, 770, 776

degrammaticalization

- see: grammaticalization*

deixis 310

deletion 536, 538

deletion of sounds *see: elision*

demography 585, 882, 902, 953

demonstrative 160, 191, 299, 310, 696, 730, 842

dental 529, 583

deontic modality 620

determiner 297

determiner phrase 716, 776

deverbal 739

devoicing 58, 185, 665, 673, 674, 885, 984

dialectal lexicon 351, 485, 797

dialectology 155, 205, 408, 482-484, 486, 530, 548, 577, 609, 621-624, 808, 985

dictionary 262, 268, 269, 274-280, 289, 485, 541, 803, 816, 818, 1040

differential object marking 772

diglossia 475

diminutive 676, 920

diphthong 525, 526

directional 301

## INDEX OF SUBJECTS

directive speech act *see: request*  
discourse analysis 313, 840  
discourse genre *see: text type*  
discourse marker 162, 223, 309, 316, 348, 554, 840  
dislocation 537, 741, 744, 752, 760, 769, 775, 778, 781-783  
dissertation 232, 238, 284, 504, 514, 1011  
dissimilation 676  
distributed morphology 701, 729  
double object 782  
DP *see: determiner phrase*  
dummy *see: expletive*  
dynamic syntax 757  
early bilingualism 473  
ECM *see: raising*  
economy (in generative syntax) *see: minimalism*  
ejective 885  
elicitation 346, 992  
elision 184, 672, 678, 684  
ellipsis 216, 218, 239, 240, 538  
emergent grammar 66, 503, 504  
emotion 135, 394  
empty head *see: head*  
enclitic *see: clitic*  
endangered language 12, 633, 1030  
ending 794

epenthesis 188, 1033  
EPP *see: extended projection principle*  
ethnicity 136, 359, 380-384, 393, 408, 411, 414, 416-419, 421, 430, 434, 452, 474, 475, 505, 528, 530, 569, 572, 576, 578, 584, 585, 595, 596, 598-601, 622, 878, 882, 905, 911, 920, 925, 927, 950-952, 969

ethnolect 136, 410, 476, 618

ethnolinguistics 465, 885, 905, 924, 933, 948

etymology 293, 294, 308, 547

euphemism 888

exceptional case marking *see: raising*

exclamative 211

exemplar theory 503, 504

existential 743

experimental phonetics/ phonology 68, 71, 178, 533, 576, 599, 665, 673-675, 677, 688

expletive 211, 747, 748

extended projection principle 78, 759, 781

eye movement 859-862

facultative modality *see: modality*

feature checking 492

feminine gender *see: gender*

feminist linguistics *see: gender issues*

first language acquisition by preschool children 90, 339, 348, 866-871

first language acquisition by school children 340-342, 347, 561, 564, 856, 858, 862, 872-874

first language acquisition, general 224, 234, 338, 859, 864, 865

flora and fauna 821, 824, 1026

focus 530, 533, 534, 540, 576, 683, 747-749, 769, 771

food and drink 303, 586

foreign accent 593

foreign language learning/teaching 152, 153, 256, 649, 656, 706, 811

foreigner talk *see: accommodation*

forensic linguistics 304

form of address *see: address*

fortis *see: plosive*

frequency (phonetics) 177, 184, 528, 530, 660

frequency of occurrence 314, 500, 503, 550, 565, 652, 1006

fricative 585, 662, 663

fronting *see: dislocation*

functional grammar

*see: functionalism*

functional style *see: register*

functionalism 59

GB *see: generative grammar*

gender 195, 240, 297, 478, 715, 755

gender issues 26, 845, 879, 888, 896, 899, 903, 919

gender variation 26, 180, 355, 358, 385, 409, 528, 529, 532, 581, 583, 584, 591, 599, 622, 636, 670, 878, 903, 910, 919, 925

generalization *see: simplification*

generative grammar 58, 205, 206, 208, 209, 212, 731, 756, 760, 761, 778, 780, 871, 1054

generative lexicon 739

genetic affiliation 981, 1035

genitive 196

genre 103, 320, 321, 390, 391, 521, 843, 845, 899, 1053

gesture 872, 873

given-new *see: information*

glide 678

globalization 117, 132, 317, 322, 390, 462, 586, 972

government and binding *see: generative grammar*

grammar acquisition 195, 224, 234, 864, 979

grammar and morphosyntax 29, 74, 75, 90, 190-196, 298, 299, 382, 478, 495, 496, 535, 573, 587, 651, 705-716, 833-835, 855, 868, 987, 989, 1000, 1002, 1049, 1051

grammatical borrowing 206, 983

grammaticalization 193, 194, 214, 215, 307, 482, 487, 491-493, 497, 511, 620, 705, 733, 757, 986

grapheme 850

handbook 128, 137, 138, 155, 165, 524

harmonic serialism 686

head 241

headless construction

*see: head*

hiatus 678

historical linguistics 14, 20, 50, 60-62, 72, 74, 143, 149, 150, 182, 184, 191, 202, 204-206, 208, 212, 225, 226, 306-308, 314, 330, 373, 401, 477, 478, 480, 481, 487, 489-509, 524, 543, 550, 559, 590, 614, 618, 620, 626-628, 639, 707, 733, 981, 988, 1027-1029, 1035, 1049, 1052

historical morphology 497, 499

historical phonology

*see: sound change*

historical semantics

*see: semantic change*

historical sociolinguistics 149, 175, 206, 330, 358, 359, 361, 364-366, 370, 375, 387, 401, 407, 412, 431, 446, 448, 449, 480, 494, 498, 501, 507, 522, 577, 580, 592, 614, 935, 981, 1020, 1029, 1034, 1038, 1052

historical syntax 143, 204-206, 208, 487, 491, 499

history of linguistics, nineteenth century 52-56, 245, 1034

history of linguistics, twentieth century 53-59, 171, 245, 249, 253, 255, 260, 309, 407, 436, 448, 805, 1034

history of linguistics, twenty-first century 59, 245, 253, 255, 260, 309

holophrase *see: ellipsis*

## INDEX OF SUBJECTS

humor 402, 898  
hydronymy *see:*  
    toponymy  
hypocorism 4, 379, 920,  
    1038  
hypotaxis *see:*  
    subordination  
iconicity 310, 401  
ideophone 710, 714,  
    817, 975  
idiom 158, 247, 258, 271,  
    281, 299, 302, 323,  
    340, 341, 548, 826  
ilocution 558  
imperative 157  
imperfective 836  
implosive 657  
indefiniteness 221, 222,  
    240, 770  
indicative *see:* mood  
indirect object 299  
infinitive 201, 558, 1000  
infix *see:* affix  
inflection *see:*  
    morphology,  
    inflectional  
information structure  
    24, 77, 89, 540, 576,  
    759, 771, 775, 839  
ingressive *see:* aspect  
inherent case *see:*  
    case in generative  
    grammar  
innovation 351, 368,  
    624  
input 343  
instrumental (semantic  
    role) 779  
interaction 102, 402,  
    559, 612, 840, 893  
intercultural  
    communication 95,  
    96, 98, 102, 132, 475,  
    555, 579, 641, 966,  
    970, 974  
interdental *see:* dental  
interface 241, 345  
interference *see:*  
    transfer  
interlanguage 979  
internationalism *see:*  
    loanword  
interrogative 293  
intonation 189, 533, 534,  
    576, 637, 671, 682,  
    691, 749-751  
intransitive 237, 739  
inversion 754, 764, 775,  
    779, 780  
irrealis *see:* mood  
island defect *see:*  
    movement  
island effect *see:*  
    movement  
jargon 820  
kinship term 586, 814,  
    815, 1033, 1041  
labial 662, 673, 676,  
    702  
labiodental *see:* labial  
language acquisition,  
    general 493, 562, 563,  
    863  
language attitudes and  
    social identity 67,  
    105-107, 112, 131,  
    134, 136, 378, 392-421,  
    434, 440, 452,  
    458, 461, 463, 467,  
    469, 476, 553, 591,  
    593-601, 609, 613, 631,  
    639, 895, 905-929,  
    933, 943, 945, 950,  
    951, 960, 962, 964,  
    965, 969, 1009,  
    1017, 1026, 1038,  
    1059  
language choice 364,  
    365, 387, 388, 395,  
    397, 411, 419, 461, 467,  
    476, 591, 596, 609,  
    610, 613, 884, 887, 891,  
    895, 900, 902, 908,  
    913, 916, 928, 945,  
    951, 954  
language  
    comprehension 337,  
    857, 956  
language contact 1, 17,  
    48, 50, 93, 131, 134,  
    137-141, 164, 175, 202,  
    205, 206, 208, 351,  
    357, 361, 373, 374, 388,  
    401, 408, 431, 458,  
    477-481, 489, 490,  
    498, 506, 508, 540,  
    552, 579, 586, 613-621,  
    639, 785, 789, 807,  
    886, 897, 975-984,  
    1027-1030, 1033, 1042,  
    1044  
language disorders,  
    developmental 91,  
    345-349  
language disorders,  
    general 865  
language disorders,  
    other than  
    developmental and  
    aphasia 350

language documentation 609, 633, 992

language faculty  
*see: linguistic competence*

language for special purposes 117, 136, 327, 422, 458, 459, 578, 608, 820, 849

language ideology 97, 98, 112, 154, 362, 372, 401, 403, 404, 406, 407, 415, 594, 598, 914, 916, 917, 933

language legislation 120, 124, 944

language loss 506

language loss and maintenance 149, 151, 392, 421, 449, 460-464, 468, 633, 638, 962-964, 973, 982

language mixing *see: mixed language*

language policy and language planning 54, 108-127, 131, 134, 140, 154, 161, 359, 396, 414, 422-457, 466, 468, 472, 594, 602-607, 634, 638, 641-643, 806, 825, 876, 880, 906, 913, 918, 922, 923, 930-961, 963, 964, 966, 970-972, 1057, 1058

language production 347, 564, 872

language shift 149, 151, 353, 371, 392, 421, 461, 467, 468, 611, 612, 638, 954, 965, 967, 973, 982

language variation 155, 178, 196, 212, 321, 326, 356, 361, 370, 376, 377, 380-383, 408, 416, 417, 433, 439, 483, 484, 525, 530, 534, 569, 576, 577, 581, 583, 585, 587-590, 670, 708, 801, 877, 880, 979

laryngeal 674

lateral 187

law 428

learnability 212, 493, 868

left periphery 203

lenis *see: plosive*

lenition 184

lexical acquisition 175, 339

lexical field 548, 586, 635

lexical hybrid *see: adaptation*

lexical phonology 188

lexicalization 247, 732, 927

lexicography, general 10, 57, 82, 83, 171, 244-256, 289, 331, 379, 513, 541, 542, 547, 651, 785-794, 917

lexicography, monolingual 257-280, 294, 543-546, 795-801, 825

lexicography, plurilingual 84, 85, 174, 281-292, 802-819, 993, 1031, 1032, 1040

lexicology 260, 303, 479, 586, 624, 740, 784, 785, 789, 814, 821, 879, 933, 975, 988, 1030, 1033, 1050

lexicon *see: etymology; lexicography, general; lexicology; phraseology; terminology*

lexicostatistics 629

lingua franca 108, 419, 555, 608, 966, 976

linguistic area 137, 141, 488, 621, 629, 981, 985

linguistic competence 337, 342, 468, 560, 566, 567, 582, 604, 607, 844, 858, 883, 902, 909

linguistic determinism *see: linguistic relativity*

linguistic geography 13, 136, 621

linguistic human rights 96, 99, 118, 363, 438, 450, 453, 906, 931, 936, 947, 951, 955, 957

linguistic ideology *see: language ideology*

linguistic landscape 94, 125, 129, 130, 465, 648, 937, 954, 967, 968

## INDEX OF SUBJECTS

linguistic norm *see:*  
standard language

linguistic prejudice 123,  
403, 578, 917

linguistic relativity 301,  
354, 784, 855

linguistic theory and  
methodology 53, 58,  
63-66, 85, 133, 172, 173,  
266, 346, 546, 593,  
633, 686, 730, 883

linguistic typology 13,  
18, 34, 75, 196, 305,  
493, 571, 753, 989,  
1036, 1042, 1043,  
1051

liquid 581

literacy 3, 67, 92, 101,  
385, 467, 559, 604,  
656, 856, 858-860,  
895, 943, 956, 958,  
960

loan translation 479,  
1033

loanword 175, 408, 436,  
456, 470, 586, 680,  
785, 789, 799, 807,  
894, 907, 965, 975,  
977, 980, 1030, 1033

locative (case) 704, 729

locative (semantic role)  
237, 733, 743, 754,  
764, 780

logophoricity *see:*  
coreference

long term memory *see*  
memory

machine processing  
*see* natural language  
processing

machine translation 96,  
327-329

manner of articulation  
*see* articulation

markedness 230, 566

masculine gender *see:*  
gender

mass noun *see:* noun  
class

matched guise *see:*  
linguistic prejudice

matrix language frame  
model 473

media 242

memory 561

mental space theory  
555

merge in generative  
grammar *see:*  
movement

metalinguistic  
awareness 844, 856

metalinguistic data 245,  
266, 267, 285, 290,  
787

metaphony 677

metaphor 114, 302, 303,  
339, 368, 548, 549,  
555, 640, 824, 832,  
843, 1018

metonymy 339

migration 93, 95, 99,  
123, 136, 149, 151, 403,  
460, 488, 579, 580,  
583, 586, 592, 631,  
926, 962, 981

mimetic *see:* ideophone

minimalism 143, 213,  
231, 232, 241, 243, 345,  
748, 749, 782

minimalist program *see*  
minimalism

minority language 110,  
120, 122, 151, 806, 901,  
914, 931, 932, 940,  
944, 947, 948, 953

mixed language 140,  
164, 373, 374, 579, 613,  
911, 976

modality 217, 306, 308,  
314, 487, 551, 552,  
620, 627

modernization 827,  
933, 939

modification 227

modifier *see:*  
modification

mood 735

morphology,  
derivational 202,  
516, 624, 730, 737-740,  
857, 920, 997, 1005,  
1006

morphology, general  
197-201, 297, 693, 701,  
717-732, 812, 830, 853,  
866, 979, 980, 991,  
992, 996, 999, 1003,  
1004

morphology,  
inflectional 370, 427,  
478, 497, 519, 569,  
697, 730, 733-736,  
739, 794

morphophonology 184,  
186, 188, 189, 689,  
692-704, 726, 729,  
734, 853, 996

mother tongue  
education 372, 396,

453, 454, 603, 874,  
900, 913, 915, 949  
motion 301, 562, 855  
movement 203, 207, 781  
multilingualism 11, 19,  
67, 93, 94, 97, 103,  
107, 108, 112, 119, 122,  
124, 127, 130-136, 140,  
152, 353, 390, 391,  
394, 397, 400, 403,  
417, 420, 438, 455,  
456, 466-476, 490,  
534, 601, 602, 604,  
609-613, 638, 639,  
642, 802, 860, 876,  
886, 887, 902, 906,  
908, 912, 913, 928-930,  
934, 936-938, 944,  
952-954, 957, 962,  
966-974  
mutation *see: lenition*  
name studies other  
than anthroponymy  
and toponymy 145,  
1024-1026, 1034  
nanosyntax 235, 236,  
732  
narrative 67, 346, 564,  
775, 872, 873, 881  
nasal 665, 673-675  
nasalization 181, 183,  
645  
national identity 401,  
404, 406, 407, 441,  
449, 631, 641, 917, 929  
natural language  
generation 519  
natural language  
processing 515, 518,  
520, 521, 664, 671, 773,  
830, 996, 999, 1001,  
1004, 1005, 1007, 1008  
necessity *see: modality*  
negation 206, 210-212,  
221, 222, 305, 401,  
491-493, 568, 724,  
744-746, 767, 1054,  
1055  
negative polarity item  
*see polarity*  
neologism 740, 827  
neuter gender *see:*  
gender  
neutralization 178, 185,  
665, 681  
NLG *see: natural*  
language generation  
NLP *see: natural*  
language processing  
nominalization 738,  
739, 1000  
non-verbal  
communication 640  
normalization *see:*  
status planning  
noun 731, 788, 810, 812,  
866, 1000  
noun class 240, 692,  
706-708, 715, 717, 718,  
721, 732, 738, 742, 755,  
765, 777, 788, 819,  
828, 864, 868, 980  
noun phrase 218, 240,  
536, 539  
NP *see: noun phrase*  
NPI *see: polarity*  
nucleus 688  
number 188, 721  
object 716, 773, 782, 870,  
986  
oblique case *see: case in*  
generative grammar  
obstruent 71, 184, 674  
official language 110,  
430, 431, 446, 471, 913,  
930, 932, 941, 952, 953  
onomatopoeia *see:*  
ideophone  
onset 71, 668, 690  
optimality theory 58,  
222, 674-676, 678,  
681, 684, 686, 749,  
750, 777  
oral language *see:*  
spoken language  
organizations 127, 171,  
436  
orthographic reform  
331  
orthography 142, 161,  
257, 266, 270, 288,  
331-335, 354, 436, 445,  
634, 801, 850-853, 861,  
1012, 1037  
OT *see: optimality*  
theory  
palatalization 70, 180,  
702, 729  
paradigm 734, 813  
paragoge *see:*  
epenthesis  
parameter *see:*  
principles and  
parameters  
parataxis *see:*  
coordination  
parsing 773, 1000, 1001  
part of speech 75, 512,  
706, 765, 810, 990,  
991, 1000, 1002, 1007

## INDEX OF SUBJECTS

participle 197, 201, 236, 497  
particle 157, 162, 212, 238, 299, 308, 314, 315  
partitive 235  
passive participle *see* participle  
passive voice 80, 91, 225, 234, 236, 761, 763, 764, 778, 780, 863, 867  
past 201, 225, 243, 427, 503, 569, 588, 698, 712, 767  
past participle *see:* participle  
peak *see:* nucleus  
perception 71, 178, 355, 495, 533, 534, 599  
perfect 500, 535, 569, 588, 700, 726  
perfective 836  
performative 705  
periphrasis 193, 194, 214, 215, 243  
personal pronoun 319, 871  
phatic 386  
phi-feature *see:* agreement  
phoneme inventory 178, 525, 527, 531, 654, 666  
phonetics, acoustic 177-180, 187, 526-530, 576, 584, 622, 662-671, 673, 674, 677, 703  
phonetics, articulatory 70, 662, 663, 675, 1049  
phonetics, auditory 71, 178, 599, 668  
phonetics, general 176, 355, 483, 484, 583, 585, 595, 660, 661, 885  
phonological change  
  *see* sound change  
phonology, general 58, 72, 74, 178, 179, 181-187, 345, 495, 496, 527, 531, 532, 561, 563, 581, 591, 645, 664-666, 670, 673-678, 850, 856, 869, 978, 984, 1056  
phonology, suprasegmental 6, 18, 73, 533, 534, 540, 566, 576, 637, 660, 679-692, 697, 699, 701, 703, 704, 751, 752, 769, 989  
phonosemantic word  
  *see:* ideophone  
phonotactics 495, 681, 692  
phraseology 86, 220, 247, 258, 281, 297, 323, 786, 826, 827  
phylogenetics *see:* genetic affiliation  
pitch *see:* accent  
place of articulation *see* articulation  
plosive 177, 529, 585, 658, 668, 673, 674  
plural 199, 354, 539, 734, 753  
plurilingual language  
  acquisition 128, 561  
polarity 747, 1055  
politeness 559, 627, 837, 841, 877, 878, 888, 924  
polysemy 158, 552, 831  
possession 196, 205, 208, 209, 489, 743  
possessive pronoun 233, 319  
possibility *see:* modality  
postposition 237, 238, 241  
power 108, 845  
PP *see:* prepositional phrase  
pragmatics 77, 88, 89, 130, 157-160, 162, 223, 309, 312-319, 322, 344, 402, 418, 473, 530, 549, 553-559, 568, 576, 588, 592, 616, 627, 640, 766, 771, 775, 783, 837-845, 872, 887, 907, 927, 934, 989  
pragmatics acquisition 873  
predication 76, 492, 743  
prefix *see:* affix  
preposition 207, 237, 238, 241, 311, 733  
prepositional phrase 238  
present 320, 700, 987  
prestige 98, 180, 411, 419, 475, 532, 581, 584, 911, 917  
prestige planning *see:* status  
planning  
preverb *see:* affix  
priming 857

principles and parameters 58, 143, 566, 1054

processing 337, 857

proclitic *see: clitic*

productivity 722, 728, 735

proficiency *see: linguistic competence*

progressive 156, 193, 194, 214, 215, 299, 306, 307, 482, 511, 550

promise *see: speech act*

pronoun 90, 218, 293, 502, 766, 782, 793

pronoun of address *see: address*

proper name 725

proper noun *see: proper name*

prosody *see: phonology, suprasegmental*

protasis *see: conditional*

prothesis *see: epenthesis*

prototype 311, 537

proverb 247, 297, 640, 786, 805, 827

pseudo-cleft *see: clefting*

psycholinguistics 29, 91, 105, 562, 855, 856

punctuation 336, 854

purism 407, 452, 479, 789

quantification 492, 730, 793

quantifier *see: quantification*

race *see: ethnicity*

raising 78, 759, 760

reading, psychology of 510, 560, 858-862, 874

realis *see: mood*

reanalysis 502, 733

recognition 857

reduction 185, 708

redundancy 538

reduplication 79, 189, 202, 217, 308, 693, 694

reference 160, 612, 766, 842

reference grammar 647

referring *see: reference*

reflexive 231-233, 319, 709

refusal *see: speech act*

refutation *see: speech act*

regional variation 36, 155, 321, 326, 351, 367, 412, 483, 484, 528, 529, 548, 585, 590, 628, 985

register 357, 549, 553, 578, 627, 913

reinforcement 491, 492

relative clause 190, 204, 209, 229, 502, 682, 733, 756, 780-782

relative tense *see: absolute vs. relative tense*

relexification 1027

repetition 79, 210

reported speech 616

request 558, 559

resultative 236, 487

retroflex 583, 662

revitalization 633, 886

rhetorics 302, 582

rhotic 377, 572, 581

root 689, 694, 722, 788, 812, 813, 819, 992

root modality *see: modality*

rule-generalization *see: simplification*

Sapir-Whorf hypothesis *see: linguistic relativity*

schwa 188, 527, 584

scope 744

script 3, 330, 387, 388, 431

second language

acquisition 196, 341, 343, 344, 354, 530, 533, 560, 565, 566, 616, 859, 875, 969, 979

secret language *see: jargon*

semantic change 499, 552, 620

semantic field *see: lexical field*

semantic function *see: semantic role*

semantic role 774

semantics, grammatical 80, 156, 157, 159, 160, 162, 193, 194, 197, 222, 228, 236, 305-312, 315, 482, 539, 550-552,

## INDEX OF SUBJECTS

620, 705, 717, 719,  
727, 763, 768, 776,  
833-836

semantics, lexical 158,  
188, 303, 304, 548,  
549, 567, 738, 739,  
784, 798, 830-832

semiotics 465, 648

semivowel *see: glide*

sentence mood *see:*  
    illocution

sequence of tenses *see:*  
    absolute vs. relative  
    tense

serial verb 1035

serialization *see: serial*  
    verb

sexism *see: gender*  
    issues

SFG *see: systemic*  
    functional grammar

short term memory *see*  
    memory

sibilant 180, 355, 529

simplification 111, 297,  
    428, 538, 718, 848

singular 734

slang *see: sociolect*

SLI *see: specific*  
    language  
    impairment

social media *see:*  
    computer-mediated  
    communication

social network 382, 414,  
    460, 522, 880

sociolect 104, 357, 358,  
    373, 374, 378, 391, 398,  
    399, 476, 542, 578,  
    591, 597, 639, 880,

886, 889, 896, 904,  
    911, 1048

sociolinguistics 3, 11, 26,  
    33, 88, 92-104, 131, 134,  
    140, 148, 155, 175, 180,  
    301, 353-391, 412, 473,  
    475, 498, 501, 505,  
    507, 522, 528-530,  
    532, 535, 542, 549,  
    569, 572, 573, 577-592,  
    611, 612, 618, 619, 622,  
    636, 639, 644, 708,  
    843, 877-904, 968,  
    976, 980, 1020, 1030,  
    1034, 1048, 1052

sociophonetics 180, 355,  
    377, 532, 572, 584,  
    589, 595, 885

sonority 69, 674, 679

sound change 186, 187,  
    293, 499, 531, 663,  
    669, 673

space 238, 347

spatial *see: space*

specific language  
    impairment 91, 340,  
    345, 346, 348, 349

specific reference 776

spectral analysis 179,  
    662, 670

speech acquisition 563,  
    869

speech act 312, 838, 898,  
    934

speech community  
    151, 358, 375, 381,  
    382, 384, 387, 393,  
    431-433, 467, 469,  
    522, 592, 880, 901,  
    908, 924

speech pathology 865

speech rate 668

speech technology 486,  
    672, 1007

split intransitivity *see:*  
    case system

spoken language 307,  
    315, 382, 383, 387, 439,  
    828, 839, 840, 872,  
    873, 902, 980, 994

Sprachbund *see:*  
    linguistic area

stammering *see: speech*  
    pathology

standard language 11,  
    33, 54, 212, 326, 375,  
    380, 383, 388, 389,  
    436, 439, 447, 808,  
    911, 917, 933

standardization 11, 33,  
    161, 330, 331, 362, 366,  
    370, 375, 380, 388,  
    389, 424, 425, 427,  
    429, 432, 433, 435,  
    436, 439, 445, 446,  
    451, 456, 472, 619,  
    634, 789, 820, 825,  
    850, 853, 917, 933,  
    935, 995

statistical and  
    quantitative

linguistics 142, 298,  
    299, 510, 629, 679

status planning 110,  
    113, 115, 122, 364,  
    365, 426, 430, 431,  
    437, 439, 446, 457,  
    459, 472, 475, 606,  
    938, 942, 943, 946

stem *see: root*

stigmatization *see:*  
linguistic prejudice

stop *see:* plosive

stranding 207

stress accent *see:*  
accent

structural borrowing  
*see* grammatical  
borrowing

structural case *see:*  
case in generative  
grammar

stylistics 320, 321

subject 762, 766, 770,  
777, 779, 870, 871

subjectivity 306

subjunctive *see:* mood

subordination 228, 229,  
259, 312

substrate 202, 205, 206,  
208, 361, 585, 618,  
1027

suffix *see:* affix

Swadesh *see:*  
lexicostatistics

syllable 18, 679, 680,  
689, 856

syncope *see:* elision

syncretism 235

syntax 7, 34, 45, 66,  
76-81, 143, 203-243,  
319, 345, 482, 487,  
491, 492, 500,  
536-540, 575, 616,  
620, 682, 683, 687,  
724, 735, 741-783,  
839, 844, 863, 870,  
871, 927, 983, 986,  
1033, 1035, 1054,  
1055

systemic functional  
grammar 88, 394,  
556, 567, 839, 942

systemic functional  
linguistics *see:*  
systemic functional  
grammar

taboo 822, 888, 890,  
892, 896, 898

tagging 512, 514, 520,  
723, 773, 990, 992,  
995, 1002, 1003, 1006,  
1007

tail-head-linkage *see:*  
cohesion

temporal construction  
*see* time

tense 225, 226, 320, 500,  
569, 705, 713, 719, 724,  
757, 769, 833-835,  
987

tenuis *see:* plosive

terminology 255, 291,  
295, 296, 422-424,  
429, 635, 799,  
820-825, 846, 847,  
930, 939, 1041

text type 230, 302, 312,  
413, 521, 553, 559, 592,  
640, 842

theme-rheme *see:*  
information  
structure

theta role *see:* semantic  
role

time 226, 550, 727

tone 637, 660, 671,  
685-688, 691, 695,  
699, 701, 703, 704

topic marking 752, 783

topic-comment  
*see:* information  
structure

toponymy 144, 978,  
1019-1023, 1039

tough-movement *see:*  
raising

transcription 1001

transfer 195, 196, 301,  
343, 355, 533, 538,  
540, 616, 706, 875

transformational-  
generative

grammar *see:*  
generative  
grammar

transitive 576, 772, 983

transitivity 738

translation 295, 296,  
322-326, 406, 437,  
537, 616, 822, 842,  
846-849

transliteration 288

turn-taking *see:*  
conversation analysis

umlaut *see:* metaphor

unaccusative 764

universal 81, 625

universal grammar 58

usage-based 339

valence *see:* valency

valency 80, 81, 774

verb 81, 197, 217, 370,  
427, 620, 697, 701,  
703, 720, 722-724, 794,  
812, 813, 830, 1000,  
1006

verb class 303, 482, 500,  
567, 738, 774, 819,  
986

## INDEX OF SUBJECTS

verb phrase 224, 724,  
744  
verb second *see: word order*  
vitality 107, 462, 464,  
467, 882, 948  
voice onset time 668  
voiced 184, 668, 685  
voiceless 663, 668  
voicing 58, 71, 177, 181,  
183, 495, 660, 665,  
885  
VOT *see: voice onset time*  
vowel 178, 179, 187, 525,  
527, 531, 577, 583, 589,  
591, 622, 659, 664,  
666, 667, 669, 670,  
677, 684, 850  
vowel harmony 677  
vowel length *see: vowel quantity*  
vowel quantity 530,  
532  
VP *see: verb phrase*  
VP shell *see: verb phrase*  
weak noun phrase *see: indefiniteness*  
wh-question *see: content question*  
word boundary 18  
word class *see: part of speech*  
word formation *see: morphology, derivational word order*  
word order 34, 224,  
241, 490, 744, 745,  
747-749  
working memory *see: memory*  
written language 3, 54,  
330, 387, 388, 413,  
427, 590, 592, 594,  
616, 623, 627, 837,  
839, 902, 958,  
1048  
X-bar *see: generative grammar*  
zero 216, 239, 866